

Bennett's  
Latin  
Series

UC-NRLF

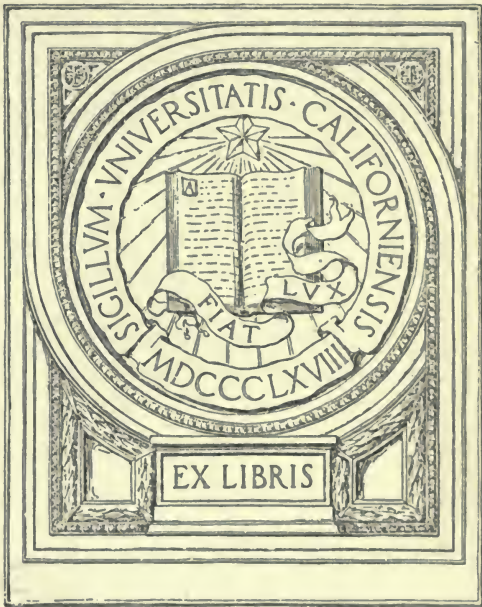


QB 310 778

Latin Writer

Allyn  
and  
Bacon

GIFT OF  
Provost  
Monroe E. Deutsch



EX LIBRIS

W. A. Nelson.





*BENNETT'S LATIN SERIES.*

LATIN GRAMMAR. 12mo, cloth, 282 pages.

LATIN LESSONS. 16mo, cloth, 191 pages.

FOUNDATIONS OF LATIN. 12mo, cloth, 250 pages.

PREPARATORY LATIN WRITER (based on Caesar). 16mo,  
cloth, 202 pages.

LATIN COMPOSITION (based on Cicero). 16mo, cloth, 172  
pages.

QUANTITATIVE READING OF LATIN POETRY. 12mo,  
paper, 49 pages.

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, Books I.-IV. 12mo, cloth, 354  
pages.

CICERO'S SELECTED ORATIONS. 12mo, cloth, 374 pages.

VIRGIL'S AENEID, Books I.-VI. 12mo, cloth, 491 pages.

Bennett's Latin Series

---

# Preparatory Latin Writer

BY

CHARLES E. BENNETT

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN CORNELL UNIVERSITY



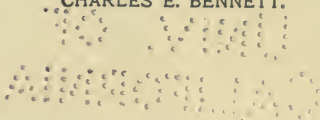
ALLYN AND BACON

Boston and Chicago

*Gift of Rev. Wm. Monroe E. Deane*

PA 2087  
B485-  
1905-

COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY  
CHARLES E. BENNETT.



Norwood Press  
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.  
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.




## PREFACE.

LIKE my *Latin Composition for Secondary Schools*, the present book has been prepared in the conviction that the primary function of Latin Composition in secondary schools is to extend and strengthen the pupil's knowledge of Latin grammar, and that this function is best fulfilled by means of a systematic presentation of the syntactical principles of the language. The following Lessons, accordingly, are devoted mainly to exercises in applying the principles of the various case and mood constructions recognized in our Latin grammars. But in order that the writing of continuous discourse may not be neglected, passages of simple English narrative, involving the principles covered in the previous exercises, are frequently introduced.

The illustrative examples given at the beginning of each lesson have been drawn with great care from Latin literature. The English sentences and passages of continuous discourse set for translation into Latin are based on the vocabulary of Caesar.

CHARLES E. BENNETT.

ITHACA, January, 1905.



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

LESSON	PAGE
I. Subject Nominative. Predicate Nouns. Appositives. The Vocative . . . . .	1
II. Agreement of Adjectives and Verbs . . . . .	4
III. Relative Pronouns. Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	7
IV. Questions and Answers . . . . .	10
V. The Accusative. Accusative of Direct Object . . . . .	13
VI. The Accusative ( <i>continued</i> ). Two Accusatives with the Same Verb . . . . .	16
VII. The Accusative ( <i>continued</i> ). Accusative of Time and Space ; Limit of Motion, <i>etc.</i> . . . . .	19
VIII. The Dative. Dative of Indirect Object . . . . .	22
IX. The Dative ( <i>continued</i> ). Dative of Reference ; of Agency . . . . .	26
X. The Dative ( <i>continued</i> ). Dative of Possession ; of Purpose ; with Adjectives . . . . .	29
XI. The Genitive. Genitive of Possession ; Subjective ; Objective . . . . .	32
XII. The Genitive ( <i>continued</i> ). Genitive of the Whole ('Partitive Genitive') ; of Quality ; Appositional . . . . .	35
XIII. The Genitive ( <i>continued</i> ). Genitive with Adjectives ; with <i>meminī</i> , <i>reminīscor</i> , <i>oblīvīscor</i> . . . . .	39
XIV. The Genitive ( <i>continued</i> ). Genitive with <i>admoneō</i> , <i>commoneō</i> , <i>commonefaciō</i> ; with Verbs of Judicial Action ; with Impersonals ; with <i>misereor</i> , <i>miserēscō</i> ; with <i>interest</i> and <i>rēfert</i> ; with other Verbs . . . . .	42
XV. The Ablative. Ablative of Separation ; of Source ; of Agent . . . . .	45
XVI. The Ablative ( <i>continued</i> ). Ablative of Comparison ; of Means ; with the Deponents <i>ūtor</i> , <i>fruor</i> , <i>etc.</i> ; with <i>opus est</i> ; with <i>nītor</i> , <i>innīxus</i> , <i>frētus</i> . . . . .	48

LESSON	PAGE
XVII. The Ablative ( <i>continued</i> ). Ablative with <i>miscēre, jungere, etc.</i> ; in Special Phrases; with Verbs of <i>Filling</i> ; of Way by Which; of Cause; of Manner . . . . .	51
XVIII. The Ablative ( <i>continued</i> ). Ablative of Attendant Circumstance; of Accompaniment; of Degree of Difference; of Quality . . . . .	55
XIX. The Ablative ( <i>continued</i> ). Ablative of Price; of Specification; Ablative Absolute . . . . .	58
XX. The Ablative ( <i>continued</i> ). Ablative of Place Where; the Locative; of Place from Which . . . . .	61
XXI. The Ablative ( <i>continued</i> ). Ablative of Time . . . . .	64
XXII. Syntax of Adjectives. Adjectives used Substantively; with the Force of Adverbs; the Comparative and Superlative; Adjectives Denoting a Part; <i>prīmus = first who</i> ; <i>ultimus = last who</i> . . . . .	67
XXIII. Pronouns. Personal; Reflexive; Reciprocal; Demonstrative . . . . .	71
XXIV. Pronouns ( <i>continued</i> ). Demonstrative; Indefinite . . . . .	74
XXV. Pronouns ( <i>continued</i> ). Indefinite; Pronominal Adjectives . . . . .	78
XXVI. Tenses of the Indicative . . . . .	81
XXVII. Hortatory, Jussive, Prohibitive, Deliberative, and Concessive Subjunctive . . . . .	84
XXVIII. The Optative and Potential Subjunctive; the Imperative . . . . .	87
XXIX. Purpose Clauses. Clauses with <i>ut, nē, quō</i> ; Relative Purpose; Relative Clauses with <i>dīgnus, indignus, idōneus</i> ; Sequence of Tenses . . . . .	90
XXX. Clauses of Characteristic. Clauses of Result . . . . .	93
XXXI. Causal Clauses. Temporal Clauses Introduced by <i>postquam, ut, ubi, cum primum, simul ac</i> . . . . .	97

## Table of Contents.

vii

LESSON	PAGE
XXXII. Temporal Clauses Introduced by <i>cum</i> ; by <i>antequam</i> and <i>priusquam</i> ; by <i>dum</i> , <i>dōnec</i> , and <i>quoad</i> . . . . .	100
XXXIII. Substantive Clauses. Substantive Clauses Developed from the Jussive ; from the Deliberative ; after Verbs of <i>Hindering</i> and <i>Preventing</i> . . . . .	103
XXXIV. Substantive Clauses ( <i>continued</i> ). Substantive Clauses Developed from the Optative ; of Result ; Introduced by <i>quod</i> . . . . .	107
XXXV. Indirect Questions . . . . .	111
XXXVI. Conditional Sentences . . . . .	114
XXXVII. Use of <i>nisi</i> , <i>sī nōn</i> , <i>sīn</i> ; Conditional Clauses of Comparison . . . . .	117
XXXVIII. Subordinate Adversative Clauses Introduced by <i>quamvis</i> , <i>quamquam</i> , <i>etc.</i> ; Provisos . . . . .	120
XXXIX. Indirect Discourse. Use of Moods and Tenses in Declaratory, Interrogative, and Imperative Sentences . . . . .	123
XL. Indirect Discourse ( <i>continued</i> ). Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	127
XLI. The Infinitive. Infinitive without Subject Accusative used as Subject ; as Object . . . . .	130
XLII. The Infinitive ( <i>continued</i> ). Infinitive with Subject Accusative, used as Subject ; as Object ; Passive Verbs Construed with the Infinitive . . . . .	133
XLIII. Participles. Tenses of the Participle ; Use of Participles . . . . .	137
XLIV. The Gerund ; the Gerundive Construction ; the Supine . . . . .	140
Supplementary Exercises in Continued Discourse . . . . .	144
Samples of College Entrance Papers in Latin Composition . . . . .	165
General Vocabulary . . . . .	169

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

Grammatical references not preceded by any initial are to the author's *Latin Grammar*.

A. & G.	.	.	.	Allen & Greenough's New Latin Grammar.
abl.	.	.	.	ablative.
acc.	.	.	.	accusative.
adv.	.	.	.	adverb.
c.	.	.	.	common (gender).
cf.	.	.	.	compare.
conj.	.	.	.	conjunction.
dat.	.	.	.	dative.
dep.	.	.	.	deponent.
<i>e.g.</i>	.	.	.	for example.
f.	.	.	.	feminine.
gen.	.	.	.	genitive.
H.	.	.	.	Harkness's Complete Latin Grammar.
<i>i.e.</i>	.	.	.	that is.
indecl.	.	.	.	indeclinable.
intrans. or intr.	.	.	.	intransitive.
lit.	.	.	.	literally.
m.	.	.	.	masculine.
n.	.	.	.	neuter.
obj.	.	.	.	object.
pl.	.	.	.	plural.
pred.	.	.	.	predicate.
prep.	.	.	.	preposition.
semi-dep.	.	.	.	semi-deponent.
subj.	.	.	.	subject.
trans. or tr.	.	.	.	transitive.

## LESSON I.

SUBJECT NOMINATIVE. PREDICATE NOUNS. APPOSITIVES.  
THE VOCATIVE.

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Subject Nominative. 166, 166. 2; A. & G. 339; H. 387 and 1.
2. Predicate Nouns. 167, 168. 1, 2; A. & G. 283, 284; H. 393. 1, 8.
3. Appositives. 169. 1, 2, 3, 5; A. & G. 282 and c; H. 393 and 1, 4.
4. The Vocative. 171; A. & G. 340; H. 402.

### EXAMPLES.

1. praeteritum tempus numquam revertitur,<sup>1</sup> *past time never returns.*
2. hōrae et diēs et mēnsēs et annī cēdunt, *hours and days and months and years pass away.*
3. agrī cultūra ā Cicerōne cōpiōsē laudātur, *farming is generously praised by Cicero.*
4. vīdī etiam senem Līvium, *I saw also Livius when he was an old man.*
5. ego<sup>2</sup> vērō periculīs dēlector, *I in fact take pleasure in dangers.*
6. haec quidem sunt studia doctrīnae, *these now are the pursuits of culture.*
7. philosophia est vītāe magistra,<sup>3</sup> *philosophy is the guide of life.*

8. Rōmulus habitus est<sup>1</sup> deus, *Romulus was regarded as a god.*

9. Croesus nōn semper mānsit<sup>1</sup> rēx, *Croesus did not always remain king.*

10. nātūram, optimam ducem, sequimur, *we follow nature, the best guide.*

11. Metellus et Lūcullus, hominēs cōsulārēs, *Metellus and Lucullus, men of consular rank.*

12. assentātiō adjūtrīx vitiōrum, *flattery, promoter of evils.*

13. duo rēgēs, ille<sup>4</sup> bellō, hīc<sup>4</sup> pāce, cīvitatē auxiliāverunt, *two kings, one by war, the other by peace, advanced the state.*

14. dēsilitē, commilitōnēs,<sup>5</sup> *jump, comrades!*

#### Notes on the Examples.

1) The verb in the Latin sentence regularly stands last (348; A. & G. 596 and *a*; H. 664), but it often precedes a predicate noun or adjective.

2) The subject is here emphatic; hence the pronoun is expressed.

3) The predicate noun here agrees in gender as well as in case with its subject.

4) Ille and hīc are in partitive apposition with the subject, rēgēs.

5) The Vocative regularly follows one or more words of the sentence.

#### VOCABULARY.

brother, frāter, trīs, m.	daughter, filia, ae, f.
capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.*	enemy (in a military or political sense), hostis, is, c.
conspiracy, conjūrātiō, ōnis, f.	father, pater, trīs, m.

\* In giving the principal parts of verbs, the perfect passive participle is given instead of the supine; if the verb is transitive, the participle is given in the masculine form, otherwise in the neuter. Where the perfect passive participle is not in use, the future active participle is given, if it occurs.



fleet, <b>classis</b> , <b>is</b> , f.	remain, <b>maneō</b> , <b>ēre</b> , <b>mānsī</b> ,
footsoldier, <b>pedes</b> , <b>itis</b> , m.	<b>mānsūrus</b> .
friend, <b>amicus</b> , <b>ī</b> , m.	rout, <b>fugō</b> , 1.
get ready, <b>comparō</b> , 1.*	see, <b>videō</b> , <b>ēre</b> , <b>vidī</b> , <b>vīsus</b> .
horseman, <b>eques</b> , <b>itis</b> , m.	son, <b>filius</b> , <b>ī</b> , m.
king, <b>rēx</b> , <b>rēgis</b> , m.	sue for, <b>petō</b> , <b>ere</b> , <b>ivī</b> or <b>ii</b> ,
leader, <b>dux</b> , <b>ducis</b> , c.	<b>ītus</b> .
peace, <b>pāx</b> , <b>pācis</b> , f.	tribe, <b>gēns</b> , <b>gentis</b> , f.

## EXERCISE.

1. You were the leaders<sup>1</sup> of this conspiracy.
2. The Helvetii were routed and sued for peace.
3. The son of Ariovistus, king of the Germans, was captured.
4. Octodurus, the winter quarters of Galba, was a village of the Veragri.
5. This man was regarded (as)<sup>2</sup> an enemy by the Gauls.<sup>3</sup>
6. Licus had become a magistrate of the Haeduan.
7. The camp of the Romans was there.
8. The Veneti, a most warlike tribe, got ready a large fleet.
9. We saw Divitiacus, the brother of Dumnorix, the Haeduan.
10. Footsoldiers and horsemen quickly assembled.
11. Catamantaloedes, the father of Casticus, had always remained a friend of the Roman people.
12. The son and daughter of Orgetorix fled.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. Words not given in the special vocabularies may be found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book, p. 169 f.
2. Words in parenthesis are not to be translated.
3. *by the Gauls*: use **ā** with the ablative.

---

\* Regular verbs of the first conjugation are indicated by the numeral 1.

## LESSON II.

### AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES AND VERBS.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Attributive and Predicate Adjectives. 233. 2; A. & G. 285. 1 and 2.
2. Agreement of Adjectives.\* 234 and 235 entire; A. & G. 286 and *a, b*, 287. 1-4; H. 394, 395. 1, 2 and N.
3. Agreement of Verbs. 254 and 255 entire; A. & G. 316 and *b*; 317. *a-d*; H. 388, 389. 1, 2; 390, 391, 392. 1-4.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *pater bonus*<sup>1</sup> *et m̄ter*, *an excellent father and mother.*
2. *eadem*<sup>2</sup> *alacritās et studium*, *the same eagerness and zeal.*
3. *pāx et concordia sunt pulchrae*, *peace and concord are glorious.*
4. *rēs operae multae*<sup>1</sup> *ac labōris*, *a matter of much effort and labor.*
5. *pater et filius capti sunt*, *the father and son were captured.*
6. *stultitia et timiditās fugienda sunt*, *folly and cowardice should be shunned.*
7. *pater et m̄ter mortui sunt*, *the father and mother died.*

---

\* Note that the principles for the agreement of adjectives cover also the use of participles in the compound tenses of the passive, as well as in the periphrastic conjugations.

8. *honōrēs et victōriæ fortuīta sunt, honors and victories are accidental.*

9. *domus, uxor, liberī inventī sunt, home, wife, and children have been gained.*

10. *populī prōvinciaeque liberātae sunt, nations and provinces were freed.*

11. *pars bēstiis objectī sunt, part were thrown to beasts.*

12. *paupertās mihi onus vīsum est, poverty seemed to me a burden.*

13. *Samnītiūm tria mīlia occīsī sunt, three thousand Samnites were slain.*

14. *neque pater neque filiū mortuus est, neither father nor son died.*

15. *caedēs ac tumultus erat, there was bloodshed and tumult.*

16. *tū et ille vēnistis, you and he came.*

#### Notes on the Examples.

1) For the position of the attributive adjective with reference to its noun, see 350. 4 and *a*; A. & G. 598. *a, b*; H. 671.

2) For the position of demonstrative pronouns, see 350. 5. *a*; A. & G. 598. *b*; H. 675.

#### VOCABULARY.

auxiliaries, <b>auxilia</b> , <b>ōrum</b> , n. cavalry, <b>equitātus</b> , <b>ūs</b> , m. cut to pieces, <b>occīdō</b> , <b>ere</b> , <b>cīdī</b> , <b>cīsus</b> . either . . . or, <b>aut</b> . . . <b>aut</b> . legion, <b>legiō</b> , <b>ōnis</b> , f. mother, <b>māter</b> , <b>mātris</b> , f. multitude, <b>multitūdō</b> , <b>inis</b> , f. praise, <b>laudō</b> , 1. return, <b>redeō</b> , <b>īre</b> , <b>īī</b> , <b>itum</b> . safe, <b>salvus</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>um</b> .	save, <b>servō</b> , 1. senate, <b>senātus</b> , <b>ūs</b> , m. soon, <b>mox</b> , adv. steadfastness, <b>cōstantia</b> , <b>ae</b> , f. tear down, <b>dīruō</b> , <b>ere</b> , <b>uī</b> , <b>utus</b> . toil, <b>labor</b> , <b>ōris</b> , m. town, <b>oppidum</b> , <b>ī</b> , n. unharmed, <b>incolumis</b> , <b>e</b> . unlike, <b>dissimilis</b> , <b>e</b> . wife, <b>uxor</b> , <b>ōris</b> , f.
---	---

## EXERCISE.

1. The bravery and steadfastness of the soldiers deserve to be praised.<sup>1</sup> 2. The senate and chieftains of this tribe formed a conspiracy. 3. Auxiliaries and cavalry had been got ready. 4. Either you or your brother will return. 5. The Roman senate and people<sup>2</sup> praised this general. 6. The mother and wife of Orgetorix were captured. 7. The gate and wall of this town were torn down. 8. Part of the Germans were saved, but ten thousand were cut to pieces. 9. The son and daughter of Liscus will remain unharmed. 10. The cavalry quickly returned into the town. 11. Many men and women will soon be present. 12. A great multitude of footsoldiers assembled. 13. The general, the legions, and the camp<sup>3</sup> are safe. 14. Toil and pleasure are unlike.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *deserve to be praised*: use the passive periphrastic conjugation.

2. *Senātus populusque Rōmānus*: this phrase regularly takes a singular verb.

3. For the use of conjunctions in enumerations, see 341. 4. *a-c*; A. & G. 323. c. 1, 3; H. 637. 6 and N.

## LESSON III.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Relative Pronouns. 250. 1-4, 251. 1, 5, 6; A. & G. 305 and *a*, 306 and *b*, 307. *c*, 308. *a*, *f* and *N*.; H. 396 and 2, 397, 398 and 1, 399. 4.

2. Possessive Pronouns. 243. 1-3, 233. 3; A. & G. 302 and *a*, *c*, *e*; H. 501, 393. 6.

### EXAMPLES.

1. agrī quī ēmptī sunt, *the lands which were bought.*
2. artēs quae ad hūmānitātem pertinent, *the studies which make for culture.*
3. calamitātēs quās tulērunt, *the disasters they bore.*
4. Virtūs et Fidēs quārum Rōmae templa sunt, *Virtue and Faith to whom (lit. of whom) there are temples at Rome.*
5. incōnstantia et temeritās quae digna nōn sunt deō, *fickleness and haste, which are not worthy of a god.*
6. puer et puella quī aderant, *the boy and girl who were present.*
7. Thēbae quod Boeōtiae caput est, *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*
8. sex mīlia, quī ex aciē perfūgerant, *six thousand who had fled from the battle.*
9. quī nātūram secūtī sunt, multa laudābilīa fēcērunt, *those who have followed nature have done many praiseworthy things.*

10. quō factum est, and by this it happened.  
 11. haec tēcum patria loquitur, your country thus pleads with you, literally, says this.  
 12. Horātius suā manū sorōrem interfēcit, Horatius slew his sister with his own hand.  
 13. compressī cōnātūs tuōs, I checked your attempts.

## VOCABULARY.

admire, admīror, 1.	restore, replace, restituō, ere,
armed, armātus, a, um.	uī, ūtus.
call, name, appellō, 1.	seize, occupō, 1.
destroy, dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus.	set on fire, incendō, ere, endī,
famous, clārus, a, um.	ēnsus.
friendly, amīcus, a, um.	shield, scūtum, ī, n.
lose, perdō, ere, perdidī,	state, cīvitās, ātis, f.
perditus.	suffer, patior, ī, passus.
nothing, nihil, indeclinable.	sword, gladius, ī, m.

## EXERCISE.

1. Caesar's soldiers seized Vesontio, which was the most famous town of the Sequani. 2. They tore down their own walls. 3. These legions which the general praises are the best. 4. The men and women whose town was destroyed are now dead. 5. Four thousand who were armed were cut to pieces. 6. These men had lost their swords and shields. 7. I have always praised your bravery, soldiers. 8. They captured a large town, which is called Toulouse. 9. The Helvetii will restore the towns and villages which they have set on fire. 10. I admire

the bravery and steadfastness which our soldiers exhibit. 11. We came to the borders of the Senones, who are a great state among the Gauls. 12. The tribes that had remained friendly suffered nothing. 13. The mother and daughter who were captured have returned.

## LESSON IV.

### QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Word Questions. 162. 1; A. & G. 333; H. 378.
2. Sentence Questions. 162. 2. *a-d*; A. & G. 332 and *a-c*; H. 378. 1, 2.
3. Double Questions. 162. 4 and *a*; A. & G. 334 and 335; H. 380 and 1.
4. Answers. 162. 5; A. & G. 336 and *a. 1, 2*; H. 379 and 1.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. quis umquam illud templum aspexit, *who ever looked at that temple?*
2. quid postulās, *what do you demand?*
3. ubi eōs convēnit, *where did he meet them?*
4. quō tandem accūsātor fūgit, *whither, pray, did the accuser flee?*
5. eundemne tū iudicem sūmēbās, *did you take the same man as judge?*
6. num noctū vēnērunt, *they didn't come at night, did they?*
7. nōnne ad urbem profectus es, *did you not set out for the city?*
8. tū in iudicium cōspectum venīre audēs, *do you dare to come into the presence of the judges?*
9. id utrum libentēs an invītī dabant, *did they give that willingly or unwillingly?*
10. stultitiamne dīcam an impudentiam singulārem, *shall I call it folly or stupendous impudence?*



11. cum homine agimus an cum immānī bēluā, are we dealing with a man or a wild beast ?  
 12. tabulās habet annōn, has he the tablets, or not ?  
 13. 'hōsne vidēs ?' 'videō.' 'Do you see these men ?' 'Yes.'  
 14. 'estisne vōs lēgātī ?' 'ita.' 'Are you envoys ?' 'Yes.'  
 15. 'estne frāter intus ?' 'Nōn est.' 'Is your brother within ?' 'No.'

VOCABULARY.

accomplish, <b>efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.</b>	money, <b>pecūnia, ae, f.</b>
ambassador, <b>lēgātus, ī, m.</b>	read, <b>legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.</b>
arrogant, <b>īsolēns, entis.</b>	recent, <b>recēns, entis.</b>
book, <b>liber, librī, m.</b>	reward, <b>remūneror, l.</b>
cruel, <b>crūdēlis, e.</b>	seem, <b>videor, ērī, vīsus.</b>
forget, <b>oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus.</b>	treacherous, <b>perfidus, a, um.</b>
how many, <b>quot, indeclinable.</b>	wage, <b>gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.</b>
land, <b>ager, agrī, m.</b>	war, <b>bellum, ī, n.</b>
	wrong, <b>injūria, ae, f.</b>

EXERCISE.

1. How many<sup>1</sup> wars did the Roman people wage ?  
 2. Were all the Gallic towns destroyed ? 3. Had you seen our friend ? 4. Did you forget this ? By no means.<sup>2</sup> 5. Will you reward these soldiers with lands or with money ? 6. Will the general who seized this hill remain here ? 7. Have you read all the books of Julius Caesar on the Gallic War ? 8. Did you see the lists which the Helvetii had left in their camp ? No. 9. What did Caesar accomplish in Gaul ? 10. When will the ambassadors whom we sent return ? 11. Will they set this town on fire or defend it<sup>3</sup> ? 12. Did you not forget these

recent wrongs? 13. Who was ever so arrogant, so cruel, so treacherous? 14. You didn't<sup>4</sup> see that village, did you? 15. Will you not do what<sup>5</sup> has seemed best to your commander?

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. Interrogative words regularly stand first.
2. *by no means*: **minimē**.
3. *it*: do not translate.
4. See Example 6.
5. *what*: **ea quæ**, *those things which*.

## LESSON V.

### THE ACCUSATIVE.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

(ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT.)

1. Simple Uses. 175. 1, 176. 1; A. & G. 387; H. 404.
2. With Compound Verbs. 175. 2. *a*; A. & G. 388. *b*; H. 406.
3. With Verbs expressing Emotions. 175. 2. *b*; A. & G. 388. *a*; H. 405. 1.
4. Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives used as Accusative of 'Result Produced.' 176. 2; A. & G. 390. *c*; H. 409. 1.
5. Cognate Accusative. 176. 4; A. & G. 390; H. 409.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *glōria virtūtem sequitur, glory follows virtue.*
2. *omnia quae cūrant meminērunt, they remember all things for which they care.*
3. *foedus ferīre, to strike a treaty.*
4. *omnēs terrōrēs subībō, I shall endure all terrors.*
5. *hortōs Epicūrī modo praeterībāmus, we were just now going past the gardens of Epicurus.*
6. *Xenophōn eadem<sup>1</sup> ferē peccat, Xenophon commits almost the same errors.*
7. *vellem idem<sup>2</sup> possem glōriārī, would that I could make the same boast.*
8. *ūnum<sup>3</sup> studētis, you have a single interest.*

9. Caesar multum<sup>4</sup> equitātū valēbat, *Caesar was strong in cavalry.*

10. mīrum somnium somniāvī, *I dreamed a remarkable dream.*

#### Notes on the Examples.

1) eadem peccat: literally, *errs the same things, i.e. makes the same errors.*

2) idem glōriārī: literally, *boast the same thing.*

3) ūnum studētis: literally, *you are zealous a single thing.*

4) multum valēbat: literally, *availed much.*

#### VOCABULARY.

approach, <b>adeō, ire, iī, itus.</b>	place, <b>locus, ī, m. ; plu., loca,</b>
bank, <b>rīpa, ae, f.</b>	<b>ōrum, n.</b>
comrade, fellow-soldier, <b>com-</b>	reply, <b>respondeō, ēre, spondī,</b>
<b>militō, ōnis, m.</b>	<b>spōnsus.</b>
cross, <b>trānseō, ire, iī, itūrus.</b>	river, <b>flūmen, inis, n.</b>
cruelty, <b>crūdēlitās, ātis, f.</b>	shudder, shudder at, <b>horreō,</b>
fortify, <b>mūniō, ire, iī, itus.</b>	<b>ēre, uī.</b>
grieve, grieve at, <b>doleō, ēre,</b>	suitable, <b>idōneus, a, um.</b>
<b>uī, itūrus.</b>	surpass, <b>praecēdō, ere, cessī,</b>
hardship, labor, <b>ōris, m.</b>	<b>cessūrus.</b>
harm, <b>noceō, ēre, uī, itūrus.</b>	surround, <b>circumveniō, ire,</b>
meet (trans.), <b>conveniō, ire,</b>	<b>vēnī, ventus.</b>
<b>vēnī, ventus.</b>	

#### EXERCISE.

1. You will shudder at the cruelty which your comrades have suffered. 2. The soldiers who had crossed the Rhine followed their commander into Germany. 3. We have done no harm.<sup>1</sup> 4. The first legion chose a suitable place and at once forti-

fied a camp. 5. The envoys of the Veneti made this reply.<sup>2</sup> 6. Orgetorix made many other mistakes.<sup>3</sup> 7. We approached the banks of the River Arar. 8. These men were grieving over their many hardships and complaining of their fate. 9. The cavalry of the enemy had already surrounded two cohorts. 10. No tribe surpasses the Helvetii in bravery.<sup>4</sup> 11. Part of these horsemen had already gone around the fortifications of the camp. 12. Has he not made the same answer? 13. Caesar met the envoys of the Helvetii in that place.

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *have done no harm* : translate : *have harmed nothing*.
2. *made this reply* : translate : *replied these things*.
3. *made many other mistakes* : see the sixth Example.
4. *in bravery* : express by the simple ablative.

## LESSON VI.

THE ACCUSATIVE (*continued*).

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Two Accusatives, — Direct Object and Predicate Accusative. 177. 1; A. & G. 393; H. 410 and 1.
2. Adjective as Predicate Accusative. 177. 2; A. & G. 393. N.; H. 410. 3.
3. Passive Construction of the Foregoing Verbs. 177. 3; A. & G. 393. *a*; H. 410. 1.
4. Two Accusatives, — Person Affected and Result Produced. 178. 1. *a-e*; A. & G. 394, 396 and *a*; H. 411.
5. Passive Construction of these Verbs. 178. 2; A. & G. 396. *b*; H. 411. 1.
6. Two Accusatives with Compound Verbs. 179. 1-3; A. & G. 395 and N. 2; H. 413.

### EXAMPLES.

1. Ancum Mārcium rēgem populus creāvit, *the people elected Ancus Marcius king.*
2. Bōjōs sociōs sibi asciscunt, *they took the Boji as their allies.*
3. haec fāma itinera īnfēsta reddiderat, *this rumor had rendered the roads dangerous.*
4. liber dē amīcitiā quī īnscībitur Laelius, *the book on friendship, which is entitled Laelius.*

5. ipse honestissimus numerābātur, *he himself was accounted most distinguished.*

6. numquam dīvitias deōs rogāvī, *I have never asked wealth from the gods.*

7. cūr id mē rogās, *why do you ask me that ?*

8. illud mē admonēs, *you give me that admonition.*

9. faciam illud quod rogātus sum, *I will do that which I have been asked.*

10. multa admonēmur, *we are given many admonitions.*

11. milītēs nāvibus flūmen trānsportat, *he sets his troops across the river by boats.*

12. Belgae sunt Rhēnum trāductī, *the Belgians were led across the Rhine.*

#### Remarks.

1. Poscō, postulō, flāgitō, while admitting the construction of two accusatives, more commonly take the accusative of the thing asked and the ablative with **ab** of the person. Petō regularly takes the latter construction, as tribūnātum ā Caesare petīvī, *I asked a tribuneship from Caesar.*

2. Rogō, *inquire*, besides neuter pronouns and adjectives, admits only **sententiam** as accusative of the thing.

3. Doceō may take an infinitive in place of the accusative of the thing, as tē doceō sentire, *I teach you to perceive.* The compound ēdoceō is the only verb of teaching that is freely used in the passive.

#### VOCABULARY.

adjudge, judge, jūdicō, 1.

ask, rogō, 1.

bridge, pōns, pontis, m.

concerning, dē, prep. with abl.

demand, postulō, 1; flāgitō, 1.

energy, virtūs, ūtis, f.

honorable, honestus, a, um.

march, iter, itineris, n.

pay, stipendium, ī, n.

powerful, potēns, entis.

salute, salutō, 1.

teach, doceō, ēre, docuī,

doctus; taught, edoctus.

tribune, tribūnus, ī, m.

troops, cōpiae, ārum, f.

watchfulness, vigilantia, ae, f.

## EXERCISE.

1. Labienus led his troops across the bridge which he had made over<sup>1</sup> this river. 2. Having been asked this<sup>2</sup> by Caesar, the envoys answered briefly.<sup>3</sup> 3. The legions will salute their leader (as) Imperator. 4. The tribunes of the tenth legion will demand their pay of the general. 5. The general's watchfulness and energy had made the march safe. 6. Why did you give my friend this admonition? 7. These chieftains have made themselves powerful among the Haedui. 8. These horsemen were regarded (as) the best. 9. Caesar's soldiers were twice led across the Rhine. 10. He had been taught all things<sup>4</sup> which this tribe regards (as) honorable. 11. These scouts were asked their opinion concerning the ascent of the mountain. 12. This man had already been adjudged an enemy of the Gauls. 13. The Haedui have a magistrate whom they call 'vergobretus.'

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *over this river* : the Latin idiom is, *in this river*.
2. *this* : use the neuter plural.
3. *briefly* : use the neuter plural of **pauci** ; literally, *answered a few things*.
4. *all things* : use the neuter plural of **omnis**.



## LESSON VII.

### THE ACCUSATIVE (*continued*).

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Accusative of Time and Space. 181. 1; A. & G. 423, 425; H. 417.
2. Accusative of Limit of Motion. 182. 1-4; A. & G. 426. 2, 427. 2, 428. *a, b, j*; H. 418 and 1, 419 and 1, 2.
3. Accusative in Exclamations. 183; A. & G. 397. *d*; H. 421.
4. Accusative as Subject of Infinitive. 184; A. & G. 397. *e*; H. 415.
5. Other Accusative Uses. 185; A. & G. 397. *a*; H. 416. 2, 3.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *decem annōs rēgnāvit, he reigned ten years.*
2. *hīc locus ab hoste sescentōs passūs aberat, this place was six hundred paces distant from the enemy.*
3. *ratis ducentōs longa pedēs, a raft two hundred feet long.*
4. *Delphōs missī sunt, they were sent to Delphi.*
5. *domōs redeunt, they return to their homes.*
6. *in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervēnit, he hastened to Gaul and arrived in the vicinity of Geneva.*
7. *Thalam pervēnit, in oppidum māgnū, he came to Thala, a large town.*
8. *nūntium ad exercitum Acēn mīsit, he sent a messenger to his army at Ace.*
9. *heu mē infēlicem, Ah, wretched me!*

10. puerōs in Tiberim mittī jussit, *he ordered the boys to be thrown into the Tiber.*

11. aliquid id genus, *something of that sort.*

12. vir cētera ēgregius, *a man excellent in other respects.*

13. m̄ximam partem lacte vīvunt, *they live for the most part on milk.*

#### Remarks.

1. *Id temporis, id aetātis, at that time, and id genus, of that kind,* were never frequently employed by Latin writers in good prose. To say *at that time*, use *eō tempore* (230; A. & G. 423. 1; H. 486); *of that kind*, *ējus modī* (203; A. & G. 345. a; H. 440. 3).

2. Observe that the accusative of the part affected (variously designated as Greek Accusative, Synecdochical Accusative, and Accusative of Specification) is regularly confined to poetry; such expressions as Virgil's *ōs umerōsque deō similis* should not be taken as models for prose writing. The Ablative of Specification (226; A. & G. 418; H. 480) is the proper case to denote this relation.

3. A favorite way of saying *so many years old*, was by means of the phrase *annōs nātus*, as, *sexāgintā annōs nātus, sixty years old*, literally, *born sixty years.*

4. To denote duration for a small number of days or years it is customary to use *bīduum, trīduum, quadriduum, two days, three days, four days*; and *biennium, triennium, quadriennium, two years, three years, four years.*

#### VOCABULARY.

battle, *proelium, ī, n.*

broad, *lātus, a, um.*

camp, *castra, ōrum, n.*

children, *līberī, ōrum, c.*

climb over, *trāscendō, ere, endī, ēnsus.*

Farther Gaul, *Gallia ulterior.*

fight, *pūgnō, 1.*

flourishing, *flōrēns, entis.*

foot, *pēs, pedis, m.*

luckless, *infēlix, icis.*

mile, *mīlle passūs*, literally, *thousand paces*; plu. *mīlia passuum.*

province, *prōvincia, ae, f.*

rower, *rēmex, igis, m.*

set out, <b>proficīscor, ī, fectus</b> sum. thick, <b>crassus, a, um.</b>	thwart, <b>trānstrum, ī, n.</b> whole, <b>tōtus, a, um.</b>
---	--

EXERCISE.

1. A great battle was fought near Bibracte.  
 2. We came to Vesontio, which was one hundred miles distant from Geneva.<sup>1</sup> 3. The camp of the enemy was six miles away. 4. The whole army set out for the vicinity of Toulouse. 5. At the age of forty-three years, Caesar came into the province of Farther Gaul. 6. The thwarts of the rowers were one foot broad and three inches thick. 7. Those who came to this camp immediately returned to their homes. 8. We climbed over a wall ten feet high. 9. The envoys who had been sent to Rome returned to Geneva in Gaul.<sup>2</sup> 10. O luckless women and children. 11. We came to Narbo, a most flourishing city.<sup>3</sup> 12. These tribes live in large part in small towns and villages. 13. For the most part these lands are not fertile. 14. This man lived here forty years. 15. They fought (for) two days.

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. from Geneva : use **ā** with the ablative.
2. See Example 8.
3. See Example 7.

## LESSON VIII.

### THE DATIVE.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

(DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT.)

1. Indirect Object in Connection with a Direct Object after Transitive Verbs. 187. I and *a*; A. & G. 362; II. 424.

2. Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs. 187. II; A. & G. 366, 367; II. 424, 426. 1, 2.

3. Passive Construction of the Last Class of Verbs. 187. II. *b*; A. & G. 372; II. 426. 3.

4. Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. 187. III. 1, 2; A. & G. 370; II. 429 and 1.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *praestat tibi benevolentiam, he shows you kindness.*

2. *praedam militibus donat, he gives the plunder to the soldiers.*

3. *Haeduorum civitatī Caesar indulserat, Caesar had favored the state of the Haedui.*

4. *Thessaliae civitatēs Pelopidam coronīs donāvērunt, the states of Thessaly presented Pelopidas with golden crowns.*

5. *aciem suam carrīs circumdedērunt, they placed their line of battle around the wagons.*

6. *Trēvirī ejus imperiō nōn pārēbant, the Treviri did not obey his order.*

7. *nocēre alterī, to injure one's neighbor.*

8. *aedificiīs omnibus pepercit, he spared all buildings.*

9. *probus invidet nēminī, the upright man envies no one.*

10. aliōrum laudī atque glōriæ m̄ximē invidētur, *the praise and glory of others is especially envied; lit. it is envied to the praise and glory, etc.*

11. mihi nōn persuāsum est, *I have not been persuaded; literally, it has not been persuaded to me.*

12. Pelopidās omnibus periculīs adfuit, *Pelopidas was present at all dangers.*

13. Asia ūbertāte agrōrum omnibus terrīs antecellit, *Asia surpasses all countries in the fertility of its lands.*

14. amicitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānīs antepōnimus, *we set friendship before all human things.*

15. mihi invidētur, <i>I am</i>		nōbīs invidētur, <i>we are en-</i>
<i>envied;</i>		<i>vidētur;</i>
tibi invidētur, <i>you are</i>		vōbīs invidētur, <i>you are en-</i>
<i>envied;</i>		<i>vidētur;</i>
eī invidētur, <i>he is en-</i>		eīs invidētur, <i>they are envied.</i>
<i>vidētur;</i>		

#### Remarks.

1. Persuādeō and noceō, besides the dative of the person, may take the Accusative of Result Produced. This construction, however, is confined to narrow limits; the chief accusatives so used are hōc, illud, id, quod, quid (interrogative and indefinite), aliquid, nihil. Examples are:

hōc Anaximandrō nōn persuāsit, *he did not persuade Anaximander to this effect.*

quid mihi istius inimicitiae nocēbunt, *what harm will that fellow's hostility do me?*

2. In the passive construction of these verbs the accusative of the thing is retained, e.g.:

hōc ipsīs Siculīs persuāsum est, *the Sicilians themselves were persuaded to this effect.*

3. With mittō and scribō one may use either the accusative with ad or the dative, according as the idea of motion is or is not predominant. Thus either mihi or ad mē scripsistī, *you wrote to me.*

## VOCABULARY.

centurion, <b>centuriō</b> , <b>ōnis</b> , m.	grain, <b>frūmentum</b> , <b>ī</b> , n.
charge, be in charge, <b>praesum</b> , <b>esse</b> , <b>fuī</b> ; put in charge, <b>praeficiō</b> , <b>ere</b> , <b>fēcī</b> , <b>fectus</b> ; with accusative of direct ob- ject and dative of the indi- rect.	injure, <b>noceō</b> , <b>ēre</b> , <b>uī</b> , <b>itūrus</b> . letter, <b>epistula</b> , <b>ae</b> , <b>f.</b> ; or <b>lit-</b> <b>terae</b> , <b>ārum</b> , <b>f.</b>
cohort, <b>cohors</b> , <b>rtis</b> , <b>f.</b>	liberal, <b>largus</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>um</b> .
enjoin, <b>praecipio</b> , <b>ere</b> , <b>cēpī</b> , <b>ceptus</b> , with dative.	obey, <b>pāreō</b> , <b>ēre</b> , <b>uī</b> , <b>itūrus</b> . persuade, <b>persuādeō</b> , <b>ēre</b> , <b>suāsī</b> , <b>suāsum</b> .
envy, <b>invidēō</b> , <b>ēre</b> , <b>vīdī</b> , <b>vī-</b> <b>sus</b> , with dative.	promise, <b>polliceor</b> , <b>ērī</b> , <b>itus</b> . reward, <b>mūnus</b> , <b>eris</b> , <b>n</b> .
furnish, <b>praebeō</b> , <b>ēre</b> , <b>uī</b> , <b>itus</b> .	spare, <b>parcō</b> , <b>ere</b> , <b>pepercī</b> . write, <b>scribō</b> , <b>ere</b> , <b>scripsī</b> , <b>scriptus</b> .

## EXERCISE.

1. Write me the letter which you promised.
2. Caesar put those centurions whom he considered best in charge of these cohorts.
3. I will do you no injury.<sup>1</sup>
4. These orders were obeyed.
5. Labienus, Caesar's lieutenant, was in charge of three legions.
6. I enjoin this upon you all.
7. We were all envied.
8. The Gauls furnished horsemen, money, and grain to Caesar.
9. This prisoner will not be spared.
10. Most liberal rewards were given to the ambassadors of the Allobroges.
11. My friends will not envy this glory of mine.<sup>2</sup>
12. We surrounded the infantry with a great multitude of cavalry.
13. All good soldiers will obey the commands of their general.
14. He will present prizes to those who

defended this bridge so bravely. 15. Did you not resist the leaders of that conspiracy? 16. I shall not be persuaded. 17. He was spared. 18. We are obeyed. 19. They are injured. 20. All the old men of the Veneti were present at this assembly. 21. Caesar spared no fields of the Suebi. 22. Who was in charge of the smaller camp?

**Caesar sets out for Gaul.**

◆ Caesar had completed the duties<sup>3</sup> of his consulship and had not yet departed for<sup>4</sup> his province, when reports were brought to him concerning the plans of the Helvetii. Two hundred and sixty-two thousand of these were already near Geneva, and were threatening the Roman province. Accordingly Caesar set out immediately for<sup>4</sup> Farther Gaul, and arrived in the vicinity of Geneva within seven days.<sup>5</sup>

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *will do you no injury* : translate : *will injure you nothing*.
2. *glory of mine* : translate : *my glory*.
3. *duties* : for *duty*, use *mūnus, eris, n.*
4. *for* : use *in* with the accusative.
5. *within seven days* : express by the ablative.

## LESSON IX.

THE DATIVE (*continued*).

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Dative of Reference. 188. 1; A. & G. 376; H. 425. 4. and N.
2. Dative of Local Standpoint. 188. 2. *a*; A. & G. 378. 2; H. 425. 4.
3. Ethical Dative. 188. 2. *b*; A. & G. 380; H. 432.
4. Dative of Person Judging. 188. 2. *c*; A. & G. 378. 1.
5. Dative of Separation. 188. 2. *d*; A. & G. 381; H. 429. 2.
6. Dative of Agency. 189. 1, 2; A. & G. 374; H. 431.

### EXAMPLES.

1. puerō dormientī caput ārdēbat, *the head of the boy burned as he slept*; lit. *the head burned to the boy sleeping*.
2. sēsē omnēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōjēcērunt, *they all threw themselves at Caesar's feet*; lit. *to Caesar at the feet*.
3. oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpīrō, *the first town of Thessaly as you come from Epirus*.
4. quid sibi vult, *what does he mean?* lit. *wish for himself*.
5. ego tibi orātōrem sic instituam, *I'll train you an orator in the following way*.
6. animō cupientī nihil satis festinātur, *to an eager mind nothing goes fast enough*.
7. fortunātus sibi Dāmoclēs vidēbātur, *to himself Damocles seemed fortunate*.



8. reddite eī vītam cui adēmistis, *restore life to him from whom you have taken it.*

9. multum tuīs operibus diūturnitās dētrahet, *time will take away much from your achievements.*

10. dīligentia praecipuē colenda est nōbīs, *carefulness must be especially cultivated by us.*

11. omnibus hominibus moriendum est, *all men must die.*

12. quī tibi ad caedem cōstitutī sunt, *who have been marked by you for murder.*

## Remarks.

1. Except in the phrase *sibi velle*, *to mean*, the Ethical Dative is rare, being confined mainly to colloquial language and to poetry.

2. Note that for the purpose of avoiding ambiguity the ablative with *ā* (*ab*) is used even with the gerundive, as, — *hostibus ā nōbīs parcendum est*, *we must spare our enemies.*

## VOCABULARY.

allies, <i>sociī, ōrum</i> , m.	justice, <i>jūstitia</i> , ae, f.
almost, <i>paene</i> , adv.	project, <i>cōnsilium</i> , ī, n.
avenue, avenue of approach,	snatch, snatch from, <i>ēripiō,</i>
<i>aditus, ūs</i> , m.	<i>ere, ripuī, reptus.</i>
bloodshed, <i>caedēs, is</i> , f.	take, take from, <i>adimō, ere,</i>
body, <i>corpus, oris</i> , n.	<i>ēmī, ēmptus.</i>
brave, <i>fortis, e.</i>	virtue, <i>virtūs, ūtis</i> , f.
cut off, <i>interclūdō, ere, clūsī,</i>	way, route, <i>iter, itineris</i> , n.
<i>clūsus.</i>	weapons, <i>arma, ōrum</i> , n.
hillock, <i>tumulus, ī</i> , m.	

## EXERCISE.

1. Much<sup>1</sup> money and many weapons were taken from the townspeople.
2. You must resist vice.<sup>2</sup>
3. He snatched the sword from the centurion.
4. What

sense<sup>3</sup> have war and bloodshed? 5. You have taken away from our allies almost all (their) rights. 6. This journey must be undertaken by us. 7. We shall cut these men<sup>4</sup> off from every avenue of approach. 8. These projects seemed good to most citizens. 9. Good friends must not be injured by you.<sup>5</sup> 10. These brave men blocked the way of the enemy<sup>6</sup> with their own bodies. | 11. This hillock is situated on the left hand as you draw near<sup>7</sup> to the city. 12. Virtue and justice ought to be cherished by all. 13. These wicked men must not be spared by good citizens.<sup>5</sup> 14. By whom must resistance be made?<sup>8</sup> 15. To me these projects seemed honorable.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. For 'much money' the Latin regularly says, 'great money.'
2. *you must resist vice*: translate: *it must be resisted (to) vice by you*. For 'vice,' use *improbitās, ātis, f.*
3. Use *volō* with the Ethical Dative.
4. In Latin, 'cut off all avenues to these men.'
5. See Remark 2 under Examples.
6. In Latin, 'blocked the way to the enemy.'
7. *as you draw near*: see Example 3.
8. See the Suggestion on sentence 2.

## LESSON X.

THE DATIVE (*continued*).

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Dative of Possession. 190 and 1; A. & G. 373 and *a*; H. 430.
2. Dative of Purpose. 191. 1, 2; A. & G. 382 and 1, 2; H. 433 and 3.
3. Dative with Adjectives. 192. 1, 2; A. & G. 383, 384; H. 434 and 2.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *nōbīs sunt conjugēs et liberī, we have wives and children.*
2. *fōns cui nōmen Arethūsa est, a fountain which has the name Arethusa.*
3. *Faustulō eī fuit nōmen, Faustulus was his name.*
4. *diēs colloquiō dictus est, a day was set for a conference.*
5. *Germānī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessitī sunt, the Germans were summoned by the Belgians for aid.*
6. *ūna rēs nostrīs māgnō ūsuī erat, one thing was of great advantage to our men, lit. to our men for great advantage.*
7. *quīnque cohortēs castrīs praesidiō reliquit, he left five cohorts as a guard for the camp.*
8. *rēs tuae mihi māximae cūrae sunt, your interests are of the greatest concern to me.*
9. *cui bonō est, to whom is it of advantage? lit. for an advantage.*
10. *hōc mihi dētrimentō est, this is a disadvantage to me.*
11. *genus litterārum meis studiīs aptum, a kind of literature suited to my studies.*

12. *lēgēs secundissimās plēbeī, adversās nōbilitātī tulit, he proposed laws most favorable to the people, but hostile to the nobility.*

#### Remarks.

1. For the difference between the Dative of Possession and the Possessive Genitive, see Lesson XI, Remark 3.

2. The Dative of Possession is mainly used with reference to material possessions; the possession of mental qualities is more frequently indicated in other ways.

3. With *nōmen est* the name is very rarely attracted into the Dative in Cicero's writings, though quite commonly so attracted in later authors. Either construction, therefore, is quite idiomatic.

4. The chief verbs that take a Dative of Purpose besides *sum* are: *relinquō, dēligō, dīcō, mittō, veniō, habēō, dūcō.*

5. Among the commonest Datives of Purpose used with *esse* are: *auxiliō, cūrae, dētrimentō, fraudī, lucrō, salūtī, impedimentō, odiō, praesidiō.*

#### VOCABULARY.

abode, <i>domicilium, ī, n.</i>	lack, <i>inopia, ae, f.</i>
aid, <i>subsidiū, ī, n.</i>	loyal, <i>fidēlis, e.</i>
choose, <i>dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.</i>	matter, thing, <i>rēs, reī, f.</i>
common, <i>commūnis, e.</i>	nation, <i>nātiō, ōnis, f.</i>
death, <i>mors, mortis, f.</i>	neighboring, <i>finitimus, a, um.</i>
dwell, <i>incolō, ere, coluī, cultus.</i>	period of life, <i>aetās, ātis, f.</i>
hatred, <i>odium, ī, n.</i>	state, <i>cīvitās, ātis, f.</i>
hindrance, <i>impedimentum, ī, n.</i>	wealth, <i>dīvitiae, ārum, f.</i>
	well-to-do, <i>beātus, a, um.</i>

#### EXERCISE.

1. The neighboring tribes are friendly to the Romans. 2. This chieftain has many lands and much

money. 3. The name of the man whom Caesar placed in charge of these winter quarters was Galba. 4. We chose a place suitable for a camp. 5. We sent as aid<sup>1</sup> to you the two legions which we considered most loyal. 6. They chose this place as an abode. 7. Death is common to every period of life. 8. In every state those who have no wealth envy the well-to-do. 9. We have many shields which we took from the Helvetii. 10. This place was not suitable for a battle. 11. The lack of grain was a hindrance<sup>2</sup> to the Romans. 12. This matter will be (for) a care to me. 13. Men who injure the state are an object of hatred<sup>3</sup> to us. 14. What nations dwelt next to the Germans?

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *as aid* : translate : *for aid*.
2. *a hindrance* : translate : *for a hindrance*.
3. *an object of hatred* : translate : *for hatred*.

## LESSON XI.

### THE GENITIVE.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Genitive of Origin. 196.
2. Genitive of Material. 197; A. & G. 344.
3. Genitive of Possession. 198. 1, 3; A. & G. 343 and *b*;  
H. 440. 1.
4. Subjective Genitive. 199; A. & G. 343. N. 1; H. 440. 1.
5. Objective Genitive. 200; A. & G. 347, 348; H. 440. 2.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *Mārcī filiū, Marcus's son.*
2. *talentū aurī, a talent of gold.*
3. *sīgna decimae legiōnis, the standards of the tenth legion.*
4. *libertātis causā, for freedom's sake.*
5. *amicitiāe grātiā, for friendship's sake.*
6. *manūs captivōrum, the hands of the prisoners.*
7. *stultī est haec spērāre, it is (the part) of a fool to hope  
this.*
8. *angustī animī est amāre divitiās, it is (characteristic)  
of a narrow mind to love riches.*
9. *metūs parentum, the fears of parents.*
10. *questūs mulierum, the laments of the women.*
11. *studium virtūtis, the pursuit of virtue.*
12. *memoria bene factōrum, the recollection of good deeds,  
lit. of things well done.*

## Remarks.

1. *Causā* is much commoner than *grātiā* in the sense on account of, for the sake of.

2. The Objective Genitive occurs most frequently in combination with nouns derived from verbs that govern the accusative; yet by an extension of usage we sometimes find the genitive used with nouns derived from verbs that govern other cases, e.g. *cōnsuētūdō hominum*, intercourse with men (cf. *cōnsuēscere cum hominibus*, to associate with men); *excessus vitæ*, departure from life (cf. *excēdere ē vitā*, to depart from life).

3. The Genitive of Possession, as compared with the Dative of Possessor, gives emphasis to the possessor; the Dative emphasizes rather the fact of possession, e.g. *hortus meī patris est*, the garden is my father's; *mihi hortus est*, I possess a garden.

## VOCABULARY.

attack, <i>impetus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m.	longing, <i>dēsīderium</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.
bring under, <i>redigō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>ēgī</i> ,	memory, <i>memoria</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
<i>āctus</i> ; construed with <i>sub</i>	power, <i>potentia</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.
and acc.	safety, <i>salūs</i> , <i>ūtis</i> , f.
character, <i>nātūra</i> , <i>ae</i> , f.	shower, <i>imber</i> , <i>imbris</i> , m.
excuse, <i>excūsātiō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f.	stone, <i>lapis</i> , <i>idis</i> , m.
fall upon, <i>incidō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>incidī</i> ;	touch, move, <i>moveō</i> , <i>ēre</i> ,
with dat. of indirect object.	<i>mōvī</i> , <i>mōtus</i> .
hear, <i>audiō</i> , <i>īre</i> , <i>īvī</i> , <i>ītus</i> .	withstand, <i>sustineō</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>uī</i> ,
hope, <i>spēs</i> , <i>eī</i> , f.	<i>tentus</i> .
leave, <i>relinquō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>līquī</i> ,	
<i>līctus</i> .	

## EXERCISE.

1. The cries of the women and children were clearly heard. 2. We shall leave these centurions (as) guardians of this bridge. 3. The excuses of these

men seemed empty to me. 4. The character of all states has ever been the same. 5. Whose soldiers remained loyal? 6. Your memory of us will touch our father. 7. A shower of stones fell upon the soldiers. 8. Longing for you never leaves me. 9. The inhabitants of that village were brought under the power of the Gauls. 10. The Romans bravely withstood the attack of the Nervii. 11. These Gauls exhibited great contempt for us. 12. We saw no hope of safety. 13. For whose sake did you assemble? 14. These conspirators were impelled by a desire of regal power. 15. The safety of all Aquitania rested on the valor of these (men).



## LESSON XII.

### THE GENITIVE (*continued*).

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Genitive of the Whole ('Partitive Genitive'). 201 entire; A. & G. 346. *a.* 1-3, *c, e*; H. 440. 5 and N., 441, 442, 443.
2. Genitive of Quality. 203. 1-5; A. & G. 345. *a, b*; H. 440. 3.
3. Appositional Genitive. 202; A. & G. 343. *d*; H. 440. 4.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. quīnque mīlia passuum, *five miles, lit. five thousands of paces.*
2. quis nostrum, *who of us?*
3. quid est causae, *what reason is there?*
4. ūnus ex amīcīs nostrīs, *one of our friends.*
5. quot vōs estis, *how many of you are there?*
6. pertuli poenārum satis, *I have endured enough penalties.*
7. plūs malī, *more mischief.*
8. aliquid illūstre, *something famous.*
9. ubi terrārum erās, *where in the world were you?*
10. vir māgnī animī, *a man of high purpose.*
11. hūjus modī cōnsilia, *plans of this sort.*
12. porticus trecentōrum pedum, *a portico three hundred feet long, lit. of three hundred feet.*
13. quantī est aestimanda virtūs, *how highly virtue ought to be prized! lit. of how much (value).*

14. *quantī aedēs ēmistī, at how high a price did you buy the house?*

15. *illae omnēs dissēsiōnēs erant ējus modī, all those dissensions were of this kind.*

16. *nōmen pācis dulce est, the name (of) 'peace' is sweet.*

#### Remarks.

1. Observe that the Genitive of Quality when applied to persons is properly used only of *permanent* characteristics; *incidental* or *transitory* qualities cannot be indicated except by the ablative. See Lesson XVIII, Remark 1.

2. Note that the adjectives most frequently employed in connection with a genitive to denote quality are adjectives of amount (e.g. *māgnus, mēximus, summus, tantus*, and numerals); *ējus, hūjus, etc.*, in combination with *modī*, also occur frequently.

#### VOCABULARY.

advance, <i>prōgredior, ī, gressus.</i>	greatest, highest (of qualities), <i>summus, a, um.</i>
courage, <i>animus, ī, m.</i>	hateful, <i>odiōsus, a, um.</i>
dead, <i>mortuus, a, um.</i>	more (substantive), <i>plūs, plūris.</i>
dig (a trench), <i>dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus</i> ; literally, <i>lead, run.</i>	plan, <i>cōnsilium, ī, n.</i>
eldest, <i>māximus nātū</i> ; literally, <i>greatest in birth.</i>	regard, consider, <i>exīstimō, 1.</i>
embankment, <i>agger, eris, m.</i>	sell, <i>vēndō, ere, vēndidī, itus.</i>
excellent, <i>ēgregius, a, um.</i>	slay, <i>occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus.</i>
fifteen, <i>quīndecim.</i>	trench, <i>fossa, ae, f.</i>

#### EXERCISE.

1. We climbed a wall (of) fifteen feet in height.<sup>1</sup>
2. Who of you was moved by longing for us? 3. Have you more money now? No. But I have land enough.

4. How many of these men remained? 5. The scouts were of good courage and advanced four miles into the territory of the enemy. 6. One of you was absent (for) three days.<sup>2</sup> 7. Four thousand cavalry and ten thousand infantry were led<sup>3</sup> across this river yesterday. 8. The name of king was always hateful to the Roman people. 9. We sold this booty at a higher price. 10. The excuses of the soldiers are of this kind. 11. Of what kind were these plans? 12. How much money did the eldest of these brothers lose? 13. Cato was regarded (as) a man of the greatest justice. 14. Two of the soldiers were left dead. 15. The soldiers dug a trench twelve feet deep<sup>4</sup> and raised an embankment sixteen feet high.<sup>4</sup>

#### The Helvetii Select a Route into Gaul.

The mountain was steep, the road was<sup>5</sup> narrow, the river was<sup>5</sup> deep. On account of the great difficulties, therefore, the Helvetii were not able to go by this route, but chose another and easier (one), which led through the territory of the Sequani. These were at first unwilling<sup>6</sup> to permit the Helvetians to pass through, but were finally won over by gifts and promises, and granted the envoys of the Helvetii the privilege<sup>7</sup> which they had so earnestly<sup>8</sup> sought.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *in height*: translate: *into height*.
2. *three days*: see Lesson VII, Remark 4.
3. See Lesson II, Example 13.

4. *twelve feet deep, sixteen feet deep*: translate: *of twelve feet, of sixteen feet.*
5. Translate *was* but once. Place it at the end of the sentence.
6. *were unwilling*: use *nōlō*.
7. *privilege*: use *potestās, ātis, f.*
8. *so earnestly*: *tantopere*.

## LESSON XIII.

### THE GENITIVE (*continued*).

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Genitive with Adjectives. 204. 1-3; A. & G. 349 and *a*, *b*, 385. *c* and 2; H. 450, 451. 1, 2 and N. 1, 3.
2. Genitive with *meminī*, *reminīscor*, *oblivīscor*. 206. 1, 2; A. & G. 350. *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*; H. 454 and 1, 455.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *semper appetentēs glōriae atque avidī laudis fuistis*, *you were always desirous of glory and eager for praise.*
2. *vir bellōrum perītissimus*, *a man most experienced in wars.*
3. *habētis ducem memorem vestrī*, *you have a leader mindful of you.*
4. *omnia plēna lūctūs et maerōris fuērunt*, *all things were full of mourning and sorrow.*
5. *fuit hōc quondam proprium populī Rōmānī*, *this was formerly characteristic of the Roman people.*
6. *ipsa calamitās commūnis est utriusque nostrum*, *the calamity itself is common to each of us.*
7. *tuī similis*, *like you.*
8. *hōc nōn vērī simile est*, *this is not likely.*
9. *vīvōrum meminī*, *I remember the living.*
10. *Cinnam meminī*, *I recall Cinna.*
11. *Epicūrī nōn licet oblivīscī*, *we cannot forget Epicurus.*
12. *meministis illum diem*, *you remember that day.*

13. numquam obliviscar noctis illius, *I shall never forget that night.*  
 14. obliviscor tuas injuriās, *I forget your injuries.*  
 15. reminiscēns veteris fāmae, *remembering the old report.*  
 16. haec reminiscitur, *he remembers this.*  
 17. multa meminī, *I remember many things.*

## Remarks.

1. With **meminī** and **obliviscor**, personal pronouns regularly stand in the genitive.
2. While **meminī** and **obliviscor** take either the accusative or the genitive of the thing remembered or forgotten, yet
3. Note that neuter pronouns (as **haec**, **illa**, **ea**, **ista**, **quae**, etc.), and adjectives used substantively (as **multa**, **pauca**, **omnia**) regularly stand in the accusative.
4. **Recordor** always takes the accusative.
5. **Reminiscī** is rarely used, especially with an object denoting a person; but **reminiscēns** and **reminiscendī** regularly supply the missing participle and gerund of **meminī**.

## VOCABULARY.

ancestors, <b>mājōrēs</b> , <b>um</b> , <b>m</b> .	ignorant, <b>ignārus</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>um</b> .
cause, <b>causa</b> , <b>ae</b> , <b>f</b> .	illustrious, <b>illūstris</b> , <b>e</b> .
characteristic of, <b>proprius</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>um</b> .	law-court, <b>basilīca</b> , <b>ae</b> , <b>f</b> .
experienced in, <b>perītus</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>um</b> .	military matters, <b>rēs militāris</b> , <b>rei militāris</b> , <b>f</b> .
few, <b>paucī</b> , <b>ae</b> , <b>a</b> .	sorrow, <b>maeror</b> , <b>ōris</b> , <b>m</b> .
humanity, <b>hūmānitās</b> , <b>ātis</b> , <b>f</b> .	statue, <b>statua</b> , <b>ae</b> , <b>f</b> .
	temple, <b>templum</b> , <b>ī</b> , <b>n</b> .

## EXERCISE.

1. Have you forgotten all the things<sup>1</sup> which we heard?
2. Justice and humanity have ever been

characteristic of the Roman people. 3. You are not ignorant, are you, of these customs? 4. Those who remember these wars will never forget the bloodshed and sorrow of which they were the cause. 5. The Roman Forum was full of temples, statues, and law-courts. 6. Labienus was regarded as experienced in<sup>2</sup> military matters. 7. Those things which they remember are of small (account).<sup>3</sup> 8. We remember few things concerning this siege. 9. These conspirators were eager for power and wealth. 10. Do you remember your illustrious ancestors? 11. He remembered us, but forgot everything else.<sup>4</sup> 12. Why are you unmindful of your country? 13. When will you forget these controversies and dissensions?

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *all the things*: *omnia ea*.
2. *in military matters*: use the genitive.
3. *of small (account)*: use the genitive of value.
4. *everything else*: translate: *all other things*, using neuter form.

## LESSON XIV.

### THE GENITIVE (*continued*).

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Genitive with *admoneō*, *commoneō*, *commonefaciō*. 207 and *a, b*; A. & G. 351; H. 456.
2. Genitive with Verbs of Judicial Action. 208. 1, 2, *a, b*; A. & G. 352 and *a*, 353. 1; H. 456 and 3, 4.
3. Genitive with Impersonal Verbs. 209. 1; A. & G. 354. *b, c*; H. 457.
4. Genitive with *misereor*, *miserescō*. 209. 2; A. & G. 354. *a*; H. 457.
5. Genitive with *interest* and *refert*. 210; 211. 1-4; A. & G. 355 and *a*; H. 449. 1-4.
6. Genitive with Other Verbs. 212. 1, 2; A. & G. 356, 357. *a*; H. 458. 2, 3.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *ipse tē veteris amicitiae commonefacit, he himself reminds you of your former friendship.*
2. *dē studiis nōs admonēs, you remind us of our studies.*
3. *haec tē admoneō, I give you this admonition.*
4. *Miltiadēs prōditionis est accūsātus, Miltiades was accused of treason.*
5. *tē avāritiae coarguō, I convict you of greed.*
6. *mājestātis absolūti sunt permultī, very many have been acquitted of treason.*
7. *capitis damnātus, condemned on a capital charge.*



8. pecūniae pūblicaē est condemnātus, *he was condemned on a charge of embezzlement, lit. of public money, i. e. of taking it.*

9. tertiā parte agrī damnātī sunt, *they were condemned (to pay) a third of their land.*

10. capite damnātus est, *he was condemned to death.*

11. mē tuī et tuōrum liberum miseret, *I pity you and your children.*

12. mē stultitiāe meae pudet, *I am ashamed of my folly.*

13. mē paenitet hōc fēcisse, *I repent having done this.*

14. miserēminī ējus, *pity him.*

15. hōc rei pūblicaē interfuit, *this concerned the common-wealth.*

16. nostrā interest, *it concerns us.*

17. omnium nostrum interest, *it concerns us all.*

18. tuā parvī rēfert, *it concerns you little.*

19. indigeō tuī cōnsiliī, *I need your counsel.*

### Remarks.

1. Moneō in the best period is not construed with the genitive.

2. In Cicero egeō (with perhaps a single exception) is followed by the ablative of the thing needed; indigeō at all periods regularly takes the genitive.

3. In Cicero at least, — and probably also generally, — interest is much more commonly used than rēfert.

### VOCABULARY.

ashamed, it shames, pudet,	cowardice, ignāvia, ae, f.
pudēre, puduit.	crime, scelus, eris, n.
at hand, be at hand, adsum,	disaster, clādēs, is, f.
esse, fuī, futūrus.	enter upon, ineō, ire, iī, itus.
concern, it concerns, interest,	error, error, ōris, m.
esse, fuit; rēfert, rēferre,	escape, trans., effugiō, ere,
rētulit.	fūgī, fugitūrus; intrans.,
convict, condemnō, l.	ēvādō, ere, vāsī, vāsum.

greatly, **māgnopere**.

help, assistance, **auxilium**, ī, n.

remind, **admoneō**, ēre, uī,

**itus**.

regret, repent, be sorry, it

repents, **paenitet**, ēre, ituit.

traitor, **prōditor**, ōris, m.

treason, **prōditiō**, ōnis, f.

### EXERCISE.

1. The Gauls often repent of the plans which they have entered upon. 2. Vercingetorix was accused of treason. 3. It is of great importance<sup>1</sup> to us to escape these dangers. 4. These soldiers were ashamed of their cowardice. 5. We pitied those Gauls who fled and were brought back to Caesar. 6. It concerns you and me to remember our duty. 7. All good men will regret this decision. 8. The help which you need is at hand. 9. I gave you this warning. 10. Do you not pity these men who have been convicted of treason? 11. Are you not ashamed to have spared this traitor? 12. No one who had been condemned to death escaped. 13. Will this man repent of his error and crime? 14. All whom it greatly concerned were present. 15. Caesar has often been accused of the greatest cruelty. 16. Who will remind him of his duty? 17. No one will convict him of theft. 18. Why did Diviċo remind Caesar of this disaster?

### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *is of great importance*: translate: *it concerns greatly*.

## LESSON XV.

### THE ABLATIVE.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Ablative of Separation. 214 entire; A. & G. 400, 401, 402. *a*; H. 462, 465.
2. Ablative of Source. 215 entire; A. & G. 403. *a*; H. 467, 469. 1, 2.
3. Ablative of Agent. 216 entire; A. & G. 405; H. 468 and 1.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *liberāmur mortis metū, we are freed from fear of death.*
2. *Dēmocritus oculīs sē privāvit, Democritus blinded himself, lit. deprived himself of his eyes.*
3. *quī omnia in pecūniā pōnet, honōre carēbit, he who centres everything in money will lack honor.*
4. *urbs nūda praesidiō, a city bare of defence.*
5. *urbem ā<sup>1</sup> tyrannō liberārunt, they delivered the city from the tyrant.*
6. *Caesar proeliō abstinēbat, Caesar refrained from fighting.*
7. *ā terrīs caelum sēcrēvit deus, the god separated the heaven from the earth.*
8. *Apollō Jove nātus est et Lātōnā, Apollo was born of Jupiter and Latona.*
9. *equestrī genere ortus est, he was born of an equestrian family.*
10. *uxōrem dūcit, ex<sup>2</sup> quā nātus est Themistoclēs, he married a wife, of whom was born Themistocles.*

11. *Belgae erant orti ab Germānīs, the Belgians were sprung from the Germans.*

12. *hominēs ā spē dēsertī, men abandoned by hope.*

13. *dē hīs rēbus per<sup>3</sup> nūntiōs certior factus est Caesar, Caesar was informed of these things by messengers.*

#### Notes on the Examples.

1) Observe that *liberō* is construed with the ablative with *ā* (**ab**) when the reference is to a person.

2) The Ablative of Source is accompanied by the preposition **ex** when the source is indicated by a pronoun.

3) When a person is viewed not as an independent agent, but rather as one through whose instrumentality something is done, this relation is expressed by **per** with the accusative.

#### VOCABULARY.

await, <b>exspectō</b> , 1.	keep away, <b>arceō</b> , <b>ēre</b> , <b>uī</b> .
born, be born, <b>nāscor</b> , <b>ī</b> , <b>nātus</b> .	lack, <b>careō</b> , <b>ēre</b> , <b>uī</b> , <b>itūrus</b> . meanwhile, <b>intereā</b> .
defender, <b>dēfēnsor</b> , <b>ōris</b> , m.	obstinacy, <b>pertinācia</b> , ae, f.
deliver, <b>liberō</b> , 1.	refrain, <b>abstineō</b> , <b>ēre</b> , <b>uī</b> .
desist, <b>dēsistō</b> , <b>ere</b> , <b>dēstitī</b> .	shelter, <b>tēctum</b> , <b>ī</b> , n.; liter- ally, <b>roof</b> .
disagree, <b>dissentiō</b> , <b>ire</b> , <b>sēnsī</b> , <b>sēnsū</b> .	strip, <b>nūdō</b> , 1.
exempt, <b>liber</b> , <b>era</b> , <b>erum</b> .	

#### EXERCISE.

1. We shall await our cavalry and shall meanwhile refrain from battle. 2. The walls of this town had already been stripped of defenders. 3. Why does Ariovistus not desist from his obstinacy? 4. These children were not born of me. 5. No fleet was seen by those who had assembled at the shore. 6. This

centurion had been without food for very many days. 7. The Ubii were delivered from oppression by Caesar. 8. Caesar had been cut off from grain and supplies by Ariovistus. 9. Have you not always disagreed with those who defend these acts? 10. This camp was fortified by soldiers of the tenth legion. 11. They stripped one of the soldiers of his weapons. 12. This man was kept for three days from shelter and food. 13. Romulus was born of Mars and Rhea Silvia. 14. Were these young men born of you? 15. He who is exempt from toil lacks the fruits of toil. 16. We kept the enemy away from these redoubts. 17. He was informed through scouts of the departure of the Gauls. 18. Piso was born of a very noble family.

#### The Helvetii Defy Caesar.

Our ancestors were brave (men), and we are all like them. They once defeated an army of yours<sup>1</sup> and slew its commander. We have decided not to return to (our) homes, but to press on<sup>2</sup> into Gaul and secure new abodes and fertile lands, which we greatly need. We shall yield neither to threats nor force,<sup>3</sup> but shall fight bravely and shall win<sup>4</sup> victory. Remember these words of ours.<sup>5</sup>

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *of yours* : translate: *your*.
2. *press on* : use *contendō, ere, endī, entum*.
3. *force* : use *violentia, ae*.
4. *win* : use *pariō, ere, peperī, partus*.
5. *of ours* : translate: *our*.

## LESSON XVI.

THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Ablative of Comparison. 217. 1-4; A. & G. 406 and *a*, 407 and *c*; H. 471 and 1, 4.
2. Ablative of Means. 218; A. & G. 409; H. 476.
3. Ablative with the Deponents, *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc. 218. 1; A. & G. 410; H. 477. I.
4. Ablative with *opus est*. 218. 2; A. & G. 411 and *a*; H. 477. III.
5. Ablative with *nītor*, *innīxus*, *frētus*. 218. 3; A. & G. 431 and *a*; H. 476. 1, 3.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *quid est in homine ratiōne dīvīnius, what is there in man diviner than reason?*
2. *nihil rārius perfectō orātōre invenitur, nothing is more rarely found than a finished orator.*
3. *Lepidus quō multī fuērunt ducēs meliōrēs, Lepidus than whom there were many better leaders.*
4. *ego tibi magis dēditus sum quam tuō frātrī, I am more devoted to you than to your brother.*
5. *plūs septingentī captī sunt, more than seven hundred were captured.*
6. *tēcum plūs annum vīxit, he lived with you more than a year.*
7. *lātius opīniōne malum dissēminātum est, the evil is more widely diffused than is thought.*

8. amīcī neque armīs neque aurō parantur, *friends are not won by arms or by gold.*

9. eā lēnitāte senātus est ūsus, *the senate exercised this indulgence.*

10. hāc eximiā fortunā fruitur, *he enjoys this noteworthy fortune.*

11. celeritāte opus est, *there is need of speed.*

12. homō nōn grātiā nītitur, *the man does not depend on influence.*

13. frētus hūmānitāte vestrā, *relying upon your kindness.*

#### Remarks.

1. Cicero in his *Orations* (and probably also in his other works) confines the use of the Ablative of Comparison mainly to negative sentences and interrogative sentences implying a negative. No other writer, however, observes so strict a canon, and even in Cicero there is quite a percentage of exceptions. The ablative *must* be used in case of relative pronouns, *i.e.* always **quō**, **quī**, **quibus**, —not **quam quī**. On the other hand, when the comparative is an *attributive* modifier of a noun in an oblique case, **quam** is used, and the proper form of the verb *esse* is expressed, as **verba Varrōnis hominis doctiōris quam fuit Claudius**, *the words of Varro, a more learned man than Claudius.*

2. Note that **ūtor** may take a second ablative (either noun or adjective) in the predicate relation, as **quō duce ūtēmur**, *whom shall we employ as leader?* **eō placidō ūtēris**, *you will find (lit. use) him tranquil.* The second ablative here bears the same relation to the first as a predicate accusative to the direct object.

#### VOCABULARY.

baggage, <b>impedīmenta</b> , <b>ōrum</b> , n.	get possession of, <b>potior</b> , <b>īrī</b> , <b>ītus</b> .
baneful, <b>capitālis</b> , e.	impel, <b>impellō</b> , ere, <b>pulī</b> , <b>pul-</b> <b>sus</b> .
dear, <b>cārus</b> , a, um.	
exercise, use, <b>ūtor</b> , <b>ī</b> , <b>ūsus</b> .	influence, <b>auctōritās</b> , <b>ātis</b> , f.

like, <b>similis</b> , e.	perform, <b>fungor</b> , <b>ī</b> , <b>fūctus</b> .
messenger, <b>nūntius</b> , <b>ī</b> , m.	seldom, <b>rārō</b> .
month, <b>mēnsis</b> , <b>is</b> , m.	soon, <b>cito</b> ; comp. <b>citius</b> .
need, there is need, <b>opus est</b> .	use, treat, find, <b>ūtor</b> , <b>ī</b> , <b>ūsus</b> .

## EXERCISE.

1. Nothing was dearer to Caesar than the safety of his soldiers. 2. How did the enemy get possession of our baggage and camp? 3. Caesar exercised his wonted mercy towards these tribes. 4. These two armies fought uninterruptedly more than six hours. 5. The other tribes were impelled by the influence of the Veneti and detained the messengers. 6. These 'soldurii' enjoy all privileges in common with<sup>1</sup> those to whose friendship they have devoted themselves. 7. Caesar often used the assistance of the Gauls. 8. Nothing is dearer to these men than liberty. 9. You will need that sword. 10. You have performed the duty of a brave soldier. 11. These tribes seldom enjoyed peace. 12. A large part of these troops arrived sooner than expected. 13. He found you braver than your brother. 14. They are impelled by love of pleasure, than which nothing is more baneful. 15. Will you treat the Haedui as friends, the Belgians, as enemies? 16. He remained in this province more than fifteen months. 17. You are more like your brother than (like) your father. 18. This I ask relying on your friendship.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *in common with*: **ūnā cum**.



## LESSON XVII.

THE ABLATIVE *(continued)*.

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Ablative with *miscēre, jungere, mūtāre, etc.* 218. 5; A. & G. 413. *a. N.*; H. 474. 2.
2. Ablative in Special Phrases. 218. 7; H. 476. 4.
3. Ablative with Verbs of *Filling* and Adjectives of *Plenty*. 218. 8; A. & G. 409. *a*; H. 477. II.
4. Ablative of Way by Which. 218. 9; A. & G. 429. *a*; H. 476.
5. Ablative of Cause. 219 entire; A. & G. 404; H. 475.
6. Ablative of Manner. 220 entire; A. & G. 412 and *a*; H. 473. 3 and N.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *inest in ējus ōrātiōne mixta modestiā gravitās, in his diction there is dignity mingled with modesty.*
2. *bellum jūctum miserrimā fugā, war joined with most wretched flight.*
3. *pāce bellum mūtāvit, he changed war for peace.*
4. *hostēs proeliō lacessīvit, he offered battle to the enemy,*  
*lit. provoked the enemy with battle.*
5. *Tullia carpentō in forum invecta est, Tullia drove to the Forum in her chariot.*
6. *castrīs sē tenuit, he kept in camp.*
7. *Sōcratēs fidibus canēbat, Socrates used to play on the lyre, lit. with the lyre.*

8. deus bonīs omnibus explēvit mundum, *God has filled the universe with all blessings.*

9. forum armātīs mīlitibus refertum vīderat, *he had seen the Forum filled with armed soldiers.*

10. Aurēliā Viā profectus est, *he set out by the Aurelian Way.*

11. frūmentum flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, *he had brought up the grain in boats by way of the river Arar.*

12. cīvitās Rōmāna avāritiā et lūxuriā labōrābat, *the Roman state suffered because of avarice and self-indulgence.*

13. ārdet dēsīderiō, *he burns with longing.*

14. meō jussū conjūrātī per forum ductī sunt, *at my bidding the conspirators were led through the Forum.*

15. cum virtūte, *virtuously.*

16. injūriā, *unjustly.*

17. māgnā gravitatē loquitur, *he speaks with great dignity.*

18. vetere prōverbiō, *according to the old saying.*

#### Remarks.

1. With *jungō*, *conjungō*, and *miscēō*, the construction of the simple ablative occurs chiefly in combination with passive participles, *jūctus*, *conjūctus*, *mixtus*, etc.

2. The Ablative of Manner is best restricted to abstract words, such as *celeritās*, *dignitās*, *virtūs*, *prudentia*, etc.

3. The Ablative of Accordance (see Example 18) appears also in such expressions as *meā sententiā*, *suīs mōribus*, *suā sponte*, etc.

#### VOCABULARY.

change (of affairs), <i>rēs novae</i> ,	justly, <i>jūre</i> .
<i>rērum novārum</i> , f.	keep in, confine, <i>teneō</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>uī</i> .
contented, <i>contentus</i> , a, um.	numbers, <i>multitūdō</i> , <i>inīs</i> , f.
efforts, <i>opera</i> , ae, f.	offer battle, <i>proeliō lacessō</i> ,
hitherto, <i>anteā</i> .	<i>ere</i> , <i>laccessivī</i> , <i>laccessi-</i>

<p>tus; literally, <i>provoke by battle.</i></p> <p>opinion, <i>sententia</i>, ae, f.</p> <p>pay, <i>pendō</i>, ere, <i>pendī</i>, <i>pēnsus</i>.</p>	<p>sally, make a sally, <i>ērumpō</i>, ere, <i>rūpī</i>, <i>ruptus</i>.</p> <p>tribute, <i>stīpendium</i>, ī, n.</p> <p>trust, <i>cōfidō</i>, ere, <i>fisus</i>.</p> <p>uprightness, <i>probitās</i>, ātis, f.</p>
---	--

EXERCISE.

1. The enemy trusted to<sup>1</sup> (their) numbers; our soldiers to<sup>1</sup> (their) valor. 2. We shall be contented with the forces which we now have. 3. Caesar, who had kept his soldiers in camp the last five days, now offered battle to the Gauls. 4. By Caesar's efforts<sup>2</sup> the Sequani were relieved of the tribute which they had hitherto paid to Ariovistus. 5. These boats were quickly filled with soldiers. 6. The Germans trained themselves in this kind of battle. 7. These soldiers returned with the greatest speed. 8. We justly demanded this of you. 9. Most of the Belgians approved these projects on account of their desire of change. 10. Will you not trust the wisdom of these friends? 11. The cavalry of the enemy found the ditches of the Romans already filled with brushwood. 12. At the order of the general the infantry made a sally by the gates. 13. In my opinion he who lives uprightly will be contented with his lot.

Caesar's Answer to the Helvetian Envoys.

I have not forgotten the disaster which you mention, or the wrongs that your ancestors inflicted on the Roman people many years ago.<sup>3</sup> Nor do I forget your

recent acts. Without my consent,<sup>4</sup> you have attempted to make a passage through the province. Besides this<sup>5</sup> you have injured the Haedui and other allies of the Roman people. I cannot grant<sup>6</sup> these things which you ask (of) me.<sup>7</sup> Therefore lay aside your folly, give me hostages, and withdraw to (your) homes.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. Use the ablative.
2. *efforts* : use the singular.
3. *many years ago* : translate : *ago by many years*.
4. *without my consent* : translate : *I being unwilling* ; Ablative Absolute.
5. *Besides this* : *praetereā*.
6. *grant* : use *concedō, ere, cessi, cessus*.
7. *which you ask of me* : see Lesson VI, Example 6.

## LESSON XVIII.

THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. 221.
2. Ablative of Accompaniment. 222; A. & G. 413 and *a*; H. 473. 1; 474. N. 1.
3. Ablative of Degree of Difference. 223; A. & G. 414; H. 479; *cf.* B. 357. 1; A. & G. 424. *f*; H. 488.
4. Ablative of Quality. 224; A. & G. 415; H. 473. 2 and N. 1.

### EXAMPLES.

1. tuō periculō jubeō librōs darī Varrōnī, *I bid the books be given Varro at your risk.*

2. rēs prōsperē gestae sunt auspiciō Ap. Claudī, *affairs were successfully managed under the auspices of Appius Claudius.*

3. pāce tuā dixerim, *with your permission I would say.*

4. cum exercitū in Galliam contendit, *he hurries to Gaul with his army.*

5. cum duābus legiōnibus sequēbātur, *he followed with two legions.*

6. māgnō exercitū profectus est, *he set out with a large army.*

7. ūnō diē longiōrem mēsem faciunt, *they make the month one day longer, lit. longer by one day.*

8. paucīs post diēbus, *a few days afterwards.*

9. post quadriduum, *four days afterwards.*

10. paucōs ante annōs, *a few years before.*  
 11. quō plūrēs erant, eō māior caedēs fuit, *the more there were, the greater was the slaughter.*  
 12. erat flūmen difficilī trānsitū, *there was a river difficult to cross, lit. of difficult passage.*  
 13. Catilīna fuit ingeniō malō, *Catiline was (a man) of a depraved disposition.*  
 14. Agēsilāus fuit corpore exiguō, *Agessilaus was of small figure.*  
 15. milītēs erant bonō animō, *the soldiers were of good courage.*

## Remarks.

1. The Ablative of Quality primarily designates qualities which are more or less transitory. The observation sometimes made that the genitive denotes *internal* qualities, and the ablative *external* ones, is not sufficiently exact. In the phrase *hortātur ut bonō animō sint*, *he urges them to be of good courage*, the quality is internal: yet the genitive could not here be used; for while the quality is internal it is transitory. The theoretical distinction between the Genitive of Quality and the Ablative of Quality is that the genitive denotes *permanent*, the ablative *transitory* qualities. Yet where ambiguity would not result the ablative may be used to denote a permanent quality. Thus one may say *vir summæ virtūtis* or *summā virtūte*, *a man of the highest character.*

In all numerical designations of *weight, dimension, etc.*, the genitive is used.

## VOCABULARY.

better (adv.), <b>melius.</b>	huge, <b>ingēns, entis.</b>
break (of camp), <b>moveō, ěre,</b> <b>mōvī, mōtus.</b>	interval, <b>intervāllum, ī, n.</b>
complexion, <b>color, ōris, m.</b>	lead back, <b>redūcō, ere, dūxī,</b> <b>ductus.</b>
confusion, <b>tumultus, ūs, m.</b>	light (fair), <b>albus, a, um.</b>
frame, <b>corpus, oris, n. ; liter-</b>	loss, <b>damnum, ī, n.</b>
<b>ally, body.</b>	nearer (adv.), <b>propius.</b>

noise, <b>strepitus</b> , ūs, m.	previously, <b>anteā</b> .
perceive, <b>sentiō</b> , īre, <b>sēnsī</b> ,	
<b>sēnsus</b> .	
	strength, <b>vīrēs</b> , <b>vīrium</b> , f.

## EXERCISE.

1. Caesar led his troops back to camp with the loss of three cohorts. 2. They broke camp with the greatest noise and confusion. 3. Ten days previously he had crossed this river with all his troops. 4. These men were of the greatest bravery and steadfastness. 5. Caesar followed the Helvetii with four legions at a great interval. 6. The nearer you are<sup>1</sup> to the enemy, the better you perceive their strength. 7. The Germans were of huge frames.<sup>2</sup> They had light complexions<sup>3</sup> and blue eyes. 8. You will set out with all your followers. 9. Soldiers who are of good courage will resist the enemy bravely. 10. He is a man of the greatest uprightness. 11. Two days afterwards he returned with his troops to Aquileia in Hither Gaul.<sup>4</sup> 12. These thwarts were two inches thicker. 13. A council of all the Gallic tribes was appointed for<sup>5</sup> a fixed day with Caesar's permission.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. In the Latin this idea is expressed by means of **absum**, followed by **ab** with the ablative; literally, *the nearer you are distant from the enemy*.

2. *huge frames*: use the singular.

3. *had light complexions*: translate, *were of light complexion*.

4. *to Aquileia in Hither Gaul*: see Lesson VII, Example 8.

5. *for*: **in**.

## LESSON XIX.

THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Ablative of Price. 225 entire; A. & G. 416, 417 and c; H. 478.
2. Ablative of Specification. 226 entire; A. & G. 418; H. 480.
3. Ablative Absolute. 227. 1, 2; A. & G. 419 and a, 420; H. 489 and 1.

### EXAMPLES.

1. haec omnia sīgna sēstertium sex mīlibus vēndita sunt, *all these statues were sold for six thousand sesterces.*
2. quantī hās aedēs ēmistī? minimō, 'at what price did you buy this house?' 'Very cheap.'
3. hī agrī māgnō vēneunt, *these lands sell for a high price.*
4. illī agrī plūris vēniērunt, *those lands sold for more.*
5. Helvētīi reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, *the Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in valor.*
6. tū temporibus errāstī, *you made a mistake as to the time.*
7. Ennius, ingeniō māximus, arte rudis, *Ennius, greatest in genius, but clumsy in art.*
8. omnēs exsiliō aut morte dīgnōs jūdicāvit, *he judged all worthy of death or exile.*
9. num hominem mājōrem nātū contemnis, *do you scorn an older man?*
10. M. Messallā M. Pīsōne cōsulibus, *in the consulship of Marcus Messalla and Marcus Piso.*



11. *mē jūdice, in my judgment, lit. I being judge.*

12. *libīdine dominante nūllus locus est temperantiae, if lust is master, there is no place for self-control.*

13. *perditīs omnibus rēbus virtūs sē sustentāre potest, though everything is lost, yet Virtue can maintain herself.*

Remarks.

1. Observe that in Latin the Ablative Absolute largely occurs where in English we employ subordinate clauses. Of the various kinds of clauses thus occurring, temporal clauses are by far the most frequent.

VOCABULARY.

across, *trāns*, prep. with acc.

alive, *vīvus*, a, um.

blame, *culpa*, ae, f.

buy, *emō, ere, emī, emptus*.

character, *mōrēs*, um, m.

district, *regiō, ōnis*, f.

horse, *equus*, ī, m.

lay waste, *vāstō*, 1.

learn, *comperiō, īre, perī, pertus*.

put to confusion, *perturbō*, 1.

quaestor, *quaestor, ōris*, m.

sesterce, *sēstertius, ī*, m., a

Roman coin worth about five

cents; gen. plu. *sēstertium*.

talent, *talentum, ī*, n.

unworthy, *indīgnus, a, um*.

worthy, *dīgnus, a, um*.

EXERCISE.

1. Having laid waste these districts<sup>1</sup> he led his army back across the Rhine. 2. We bought these weapons at a very high price.<sup>2</sup> 3. When he had learned these things,<sup>3</sup> he informed all the tribunes concerning his plans. 4. The quaestor sold the booty for ten talents. 5. Who will consider Dumnorix worthy of blame? 6. We bought this horse for

three thousand sesterces. 7. Having made an attack, the enemy quickly put our soldiers to confusion. 8. You shall not lack assistance, while I am alive. 9. Are those worthy of honor who have shown themselves unworthy of confidence? 10. When the camp had been fortified he drew up his line of battle. 11. In the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus Crassus, a great multitude of Germans crossed the Rhine. 12. This centurion surpassed the rest in bravery. 13. These two men are very similar in appearance and character. 14. For how much<sup>4</sup> did you sell these lands? 15. Having occupied this town, he stationed a garrison there.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. Use the Ablative Absolute in translating this and similar phrases.
2. *at a very high price*: express by a single word. Compare Examples 2, 3.
3. Translate this and other subordinate clauses in this exercise by the Ablative Absolute.
4. *for how much*: see Example 2.

## LESSON XX.

THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Ablative of Place Where. 228 entire; A. & G. 426. 3, 427. 3, 429. 1, 2; H. 483; 485. 2.
2. The Locative Case. 232. 1, 2; 169. 4; A. & G. 427. 3 and *a*; 282. *d*; H. 483; 484. 1, 2; 483. 2.
3. Ablative of Place from Which. 229 entire; A. & G. 426. 1, 427. 1, 428. *a*, *b*; H. 461, 462 and 3, 4.

### EXAMPLES.

1. in urbe, *in the city*.
2. in Graeciā, *in Greece*.
3. Carthāgine, *at Carthage*.
4. Athēnīs, *at Athens*.
5. Curibus, *at Cures*.
6. Tarquiniīs, *at Tarquinii*.
7. his locīs, *in these places*.
8. tōtā prōvinciā, *in the whole province*.
9. rūrī, *in the country*.
10. terrā marīque, *on land and sea*.
11. Rōmae, *at Rome*.
12. Corinthī, *at Corinth*.
13. Rhodī, *at Rhodes*.
14. domī, *at home*.
15. humī, *on the ground*.
16. Antiochiāe, celebri quondam urbe, *at Antioch, once a famous city*.

17. *Albae, in urbe opportūnā, at Alba, a convenient city.*  
 18. *ex prōvinciā rediit, he returned from the province.*  
 19. *ex Syriā dēcessit, he withdrew from Syria.*  
 20. *Athēnīs profectus est, he set out from Athens.*  
 21. *domō fugientēs, fleeing from home.*  
 22. *Teānum abest ā Lārīnō xviii mīlia passuum, Teanum is eighteen miles distant from Larinum.*  
 23. *ā Gergoviā dēcessit, he withdrew from the neighborhood of Gergovia.*  
 24. *Tusculō, ex clārissimō oppidō, from Tusculum, a most famous town.*

## VOCABULARY.

Britain, <b>Britannia</b> , ae, f. country, <b>rūs, rūris</b> , n. distant, be distant, <b>absum</b> , <b>esse, āfuī, āfutūrus</b> . drive away, drive out, <b>expellō</b> , <b>ere, pulī, pulsus</b> . happen, <b>fiō, fierī, factus sum</b> . home, <b>domus, ūs</b> , f. hurry, <b>contendō, ere, tendī</b> , <b>tentum</b> .	lead away, <b>dēdūcō, ere, dūxī</b> , <b>ductus</b> . on all sides, from all sides, <b>undique</b> . pitch (a camp), <b>pōnō, ere</b> , <b>posuī, positus</b> . sixty, <b>sexāgintā</b> . transport, <b>trānsportō, l</b> . vessel, <b>nāvis, is, f</b> . withdraw, <b>dēcēdō, ere, cessī</b> , <b>cessūrus</b> .
---	---

## EXERCISE.

1. Crassus had pitched his camp in Aquitania.
2. Many brave men were summoned from Toulouse and Narbo.
3. Vercingetorix was driven out of Gergovia, a town of the Arverni.
4. We came first to Vesontio; from Vesontio we set out for Alesia.
5. We shall hurry from Alesia into Aquitania.
6. The Belgians assembled on all sides from the

country to Bibracte. 7. Caesar hurried from Aquileia, a town of the Veneti, into Gaul. 8. These things happened at Octodurus, a village of the Veragri. 9. This father drove his son away from home. 10. We remained three days at Bibracte. 11. Apollo and Diana were born at Delos. 12. Caesar transported his troops by vessels from Gaul to Britain. 13. This town is sixty miles distant from Toulouse. 14. The Germans live in villages. 15. We withdrew to the neighborhood of Geneva. 16. When will you be at home?

**Liscus Informs Caesar of Dumnorix's Influence.**

Dumnorix, O Caesar, is not only hostile to all the Romans, but he hates you especially. For by your arrival he has lost a large share of the power which he used to possess.<sup>1</sup> But he still has very great influence,<sup>2</sup> and is the leader of a powerful party, which holds him in the highest honor. His friends would eagerly avenge<sup>3</sup> his punishment. Therefore, in my judgment, you must spare him.<sup>4</sup>

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *used to possess*: express by the imperfect tense of the word for *possess*.

2. *has very great influence*: translate: *avails very much in influence*.

3. *would avenge*: use the present subjunctive.

4. *you must spare him*: see Lesson IX, Remark 2.

## LESSON XXI.

ABLATIVE (*continued*).

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Ablative of Time at Which. 230. 1-3; A. & G. 423 and 1; H. 486.
2. Ablative of Time within Which. 231; A. & G. 423, 424. a; H. 487 and 1.
3. Roman Dates. 371, 372; A. & G. 631; H. 754; 755.

### EXAMPLES.

1. Castoris aedēs eōdem annō Īdibus Quīntilibus dēdicāta est, *the temple of Castor was dedicated in the same year, on the Ides of July.*

2. vōta erat Latīnō bellō, *it had been vowed in the Latin War.*

3. hās ōrātiōnēs Lūdīs scripsī, *I wrote these speeches at the time of the Games.*

4. eōrum adventū equōs Germānis distribuit, *at their arrival he distributed horses among the Germans.*

5. in bellō, *in time of war.*

6. primō bellō Pūnicō, *in the First Punic War.*

7. tribus hōrīs Rōmam veniētis, *within three hours you will come to Rome.*

8. paucīs diēbus revertar, *I shall return within a few days.*

9. in sex mēnsibus prōmissa sunt ducenta talenta, *in six months two hundred talents were promised.*

10. bis in diē, *twice a day.*

11. quadriduō mors Rōscī Chr̄ysogonō nūntiātur, *within four days Roscius's death was reported to Chrysogonus.*

12. ante diem octāvum Īdūs Novembrēs, *on the 6th of November, lit. on the eighth day before the Ides* (strictly the seventh day before the Ides, which were the 13th).

## Remarks.

1. Observe that words not primarily denoting a period of time, as **pāx**, *peace*, **bellum**, *war*, commonly require the preposition **in** to denote time *at which*, unless they are accompanied by a modifier (adjective, demonstrative, or genitive). Thus **in bellō**, *in war*, but **prīmō bellō Pūnicō**, *in the First Punic War*.

2. **In bellō**, *in war*, is to be distinguished in meaning and use from **bellī**. The former phrase is essentially *temporal* in meaning, — *in time of war*, while **bellī** is rather *local*, and means *in the field*; it occurs almost exclusively in combination with **domī**, *at home*, as **domī bellique**, *at home and in the field*.

3. To denote time *within which*, *in the course of which*, the preposition **in** is almost invariably employed when the clause contains a distributive numeral (**bis**, **binī**; **ter**, **ternī**) or **saepe**.

4. **Bīduō**, **trīduō**, **quadriduō**, and **bienniō**, **trienniō**, **quadrienniō**, are regularly used instead of **duōbus diēbus**, **duōbus annīs**, *etc.* Compare Lesson VII, Remark 4.

## VOCABULARY.

arrive, <b>pervenīō</b> , <b>īre</b> , <b>vēnī</b> ,	March, of March, <b>Mārtius</b> , a,
<b>ventum</b> .	<b>um</b> .
choose, elect, <b>creō</b> , 1.	Nones, <b>Nōnae</b> , <b>ārum</b> , f.
consecrate, <b>cōnsecrō</b> , 1.	recollection, <b>memoria</b> , <b>ae</b> , f.
consul, <b>cōnsul</b> , <b>is</b> , m.	spot, <b>locus</b> , <b>ī</b> , m.
dedicate, <b>dēdicō</b> , 1.	time, <b>tempus</b> , <b>oris</b> , n.
election, <b>comitia</b> , <b>ōrum</b> , n.	twice, <b>bis</b> .
Ides, <b>Īdūs</b> , <b>uum</b> , f.	watch, <b>vigilia</b> , <b>ae</b> , f.
Kalends, <b>Kalendae</b> , <b>ārum</b> , f.	

## EXERCISE.

1. The Druids assemble in a consecrated spot at a fixed time of the year. 2. This happened within the recollection of your fathers. 3. He returned home March 11th, in the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus Crassus. 4. This temple was dedicated April 20th. 5. At this election Julius Caesar and Marcus Bibulus were chosen consuls. 6. Within a few months Caesar set out for<sup>1</sup> Gaul and arrived in the neighborhood of Geneva in seven days. 7. At that time the Helvetii were threatening Gaul. 8. April 5th they sent ambassadors to Caesar. 9. Caesar ordered these envoys to return April 13th. 10. This centurion died last month in Britain. 11. He will set out from this camp in the third watch. 12. Twice a month he used<sup>2</sup> to send letters to Rome. 13. I received your letter March 1st. 14. Within a few hours we shall return home. 15. These two men died the same year.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *for*: use in with the accusative.
2. *used to send*: express by employing the imperfect tense.



## LESSON XXII.

### SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Adjectives used Substantively. 236-238; A. & G. 288 and *a, b*; 289. *a, b*; H. 494, 495.
2. Adjectives with the Force of Adverbs. 239; A. & G. 290; H. 497 and 1.
3. Special Uses of the Comparative and Superlative. 240. 1-4; A. & G. 291. *a, b*; 292; H. 498; 499.
4. Adjectives denoting a Special Part of an Object. 241. 1; A. & G. 293; H. 497. 4.
5. *Prīmus* = *first who*; *ultimus* = *last who*; *etc.* 241. 2; A. & G. 290; H. 497. 3.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *sēcēdant improbī, sēcernant sē ā bonīs, let the bad withdraw, let them separate themselves from the good.*
2. *omnēs stultī, all the foolish.*
3. *omnia, all things.*<sup>1</sup>
4. *Caesar suōs castrīs tenuit, Caesar kept his men in camp.*
5. *homō doctus, a scholar.*
6. *honestum, virtue.*
7. *aliquid novī, something new,*<sup>2</sup> *some news.*
8. *laetī dēcēdunt, they gladly withdraw.*
9. *sublīmis raptus est, he was snatched up on high.*
10. *Vespasiānus pecūniae avidior fuit, Vespasian was too eager for money.*

11. *ējus auctōritās vel māxima erat, his authority was the very greatest.*

12. *cōntiō fuit vērior quam grātor, the speech was more true than it was acceptable.*

13. *extrēmā hieme, in the latter part of winter.*

14. *summus mōns, the top of the mountain.*

15. *Cicerō prīmus philosophiam ē Graeciā in Latium trādūxit, Cicero was the first to transplant philosophy from Greece to Latium.*

16. *hanc urbem prīmam adiī, this was the first city that I visited.*

#### Notes on the Examples.

1) In other cases than the nominative and accusative this idea is best expressed by means of *rēs*, e.g. *omnium rērum*, of all things; *omnibus rēbus*, by all things. *Omnium*, *omnibus*, *parvōrum*, *parvīs*, and similar forms would be ambiguous in gender.

2) Lit. *something of new*, — Genitive of the Whole.

#### VOCABULARY.

assault, <i>oppūgnātiō, ōnis, f.</i>	only, <i>tantum.</i>
carry (in), <i>īferō, ferre,</i>	poor, pauper, <i>eris.</i>
<i>intulī, illātus.</i>	speech, <i>ōrātiō, ōnis, f.</i>
desirous, <i>avidus, a, um.</i>	surrender, <i>trādō, ere, didī,</i>
fortification, <i>mūnītiō, ōnis, f.</i>	<i>ditus.</i>
march out, <i>ēgredior, ī,</i>	unwilling, <i>invītus, a, um.</i>
<i>gressus.</i>	within, <i>intrā</i> , prep. with acc.
numbers (in great numbers),	wounded, <i>saucius, a, um.</i>
<i>frequēns, entis.</i>	

#### EXERCISE.

1. This speech was regarded by all as rather arrogant.
2. These poor men are desirous of many things.
3. The wounded were carried within the fortifications by their comrades.
4. We have heard only a few

things concerning this assault. 5. Roman soldiers often went eagerly into the very greatest dangers. 6. What news have these messengers brought from Britain? 7. Our men marched out from camp and carried with them<sup>1</sup> all their belongings.<sup>2</sup> 8. The Gauls unwillingly surrendered themselves to the Roman commander. 9. The women and children assembled in great numbers on the wall of this town. 10. You were the last (persons) I saw. 11. At the end of winter Caesar led his men out of winter quarters. 12. He had already filled the middle of the hill with light-armed troops. 13. At the foot of the mountain he stationed the infantry and cavalry. 14. After this battle the Helvetii were in need of all things. 15. The rich often forget the poor.

#### Organization and Size of a Roman Legion.

At this time there were in a Roman legion ten cohorts. In each cohort were three maniples, and in each maniple two centuries. In an entire legion, therefore, there were thirty maniples and sixty centuries. Thus<sup>3</sup> in a full legion there were six thousand soldiers. But a legion was seldom so large. Usually it was much smaller.<sup>4</sup> The legions of Caesar's army, as it seems, did not often contain<sup>5</sup> more than three thousand six hundred<sup>6</sup> (men).

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *with them*: use the reflexive.

2. *their belongings*: in Latin: *their (things)*, neuter plural of *suus*.

3. *thus*: **itaque**.
4. *much smaller*: translate: *smaller by much*.
5. *did not contain*: use **expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus**, literally, *fill out*.
6. *more than three thousand six hundred*: see Lesson XVI, Example 5.

## LESSON XXIII.

### PRONOUNS.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Personal Pronouns. 242. 1, 2, 4; A. & G. 295. *a, b*; H. 500 and 4.
2. Reflexive Pronouns 244 entire; A. & G. 299 and *a*, 300. 1, 2, 301. *a, b*; H. 503 and 3, 4; 504.
3. Reciprocal Pronouns. 245; A. & G. 301. *f*; H. 502. 1.
4. *Hic, Ille, Iste*. 246. 1-5; A. & G. 297. *a-c*; 296. *a*; H. 505 and 1; 506. 1; 507 and 3, 4.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *quis vestrum, who of you?*
2. *dux memor vestri, a leader mindful of you.*
3. *fortūna omnium nostrum, the fortunes of us all.*
4. *sē diligit, he loves himself.*
5. *Alexander Clitum familiārem suum interēmit, Alexander killed Clitus, his own comrade.*
6. *Metellus lēgātis persuādet ut Jugurtham sibi<sup>1</sup> trāderent, Metellus persuaded the envoys to hand over Jugurtha to him.*
7. *mē mīsit ut haec nūntiem suae<sup>1</sup> uxōrī, he has sent me to announce these things to his wife.*
8. *suūm cuique tribuendum est, to each must be assigned his own.*
9. *nōs nostraque dēfendimus, we defend ourselves and our possessions.*

10. *inter nōs colloquimur, we converse with each other.*  
 11. *puerī amant inter sē, the boys love each other.*  
 12. *contrōversiās inter sē militēs habuērunt, the soldiers had disputes with each other.*  
 13. *hōc in tuā, illud in deōrum manū est, the latter is in your power, the former in that of the gods.*  
 14. *Themistoclēs hīs verbīs epistolam mīsit, Themistocles sent a letter (couched) in the following words.*  
 15. *haec<sup>2</sup> mea culpa est, this is my fault.*

## Notes on the Examples.

- 1) *Sibi* and *suae* illustrate the use of the indirect reflexive.  
 2) *Haec* is here attracted from *hōc* to the gender of the predicate noun; such attraction of the pronoun is the rule in Latin.

## Remarks.

1. *Suī* is regularly employed like *meī* and *tuī* as an Objective Genitive. To indicate the whole of which a part is taken the Latin may use either *ex sē*, *ex suis*, or *suōrum*, e.g. *multōs ex sē* or *multōs suōrum misērunt, they sent many of their own number.*  
 2. Observe that in such expressions as *inter sē amant, they love each other*, no direct object is expressed.

## VOCABULARY.

barbarians, <b>barbarī, ōrum, m.</b>	free, <b>liberō, l.</b>
congratulate, <b>grātulor, l;</b>	honor, <b>honōrō, l.</b>
governs the dative.	indulge, <b>indulgeō, ēre, dulsi,</b>
difficult, <b>difficilis, e.</b>	<b>dultūrus.</b>
desire, <b>libidō, inis, f.</b>	love, <b>amō, l.</b>
distribute, <b>distribuō, ere, uī,</b>	mindful, <b>memor, oris.</b>
<b>ūtus.</b>	safety, <b>salūs, ūtis, f.</b>
easy, <b>facilis, e.</b>	seek, <b>petō, ere, ivī or iī, itus.</b>
either, either one (of two),	welcome, <b>grātus, a, um.</b>
<b>utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs.</b>	

## EXERCISE.

1. The latter plan is easy, the former (is) difficult.
2. Why do you envy each other?<sup>1</sup>
3. This is the glory which we have long sought.
4. These barbarians were congratulating each other.
5. They distributed those provinces among themselves.
6. Why have you not freed yourselves from the power<sup>2</sup> of Ariovistus?
7. They indulged themselves and all their desires.
8. The Romans lost forty of their number<sup>3</sup> in this battle.
9. Have you been mindful of me? No. I have forgotten you.
10. Is not the safety of you all dearer to me than life?
11. Who of you has seen these deserters?
12. Your longing for us is very welcome to my brother and me.
13. He is loved and honored by his own friends.
14. I have much less strength than either one of you.
15. The chiefs of these tribes gave each other an oath.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. Compare Example 10.
2. *power*: use *imperium*, i, n.
3. See Remark 1.

## LESSON XXIV.

PRONOUNS (*continued*).

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. **Is.** 247. 1-4; A. & G. 297. *d*; H. 508 and 1, 2, 4.
2. **Īdem.** 248. 1, 2; A. & G. 298. *b*; 384. N. 2; H. 508. 3, 5.
3. **Ipse.** 249. 1, 2; A. & G. 298. *c* and N. 1, *f*; H. 509. 1, 3.
4. **Quis** (Indefinite). 252. 1; A. & G. 310; H. 512 and 1.
5. **Aliquis.** 252. 2; A. & G. 311; H. 512.
6. **Quīdam.** 252. 3 and *a*; A. & G. 310; H. 512. 6.

### EXAMPLES.

1. **in eīs urbibus quae ad sē<sup>1</sup> dēfēcerant praesidia impōnit,** *he puts garrisons in those cities which had deserted to him.*
2. **Metellus, is quī multōs dētēruit,** *Metellus, he who deterred many.*
3. **moram spērārunt, id quod assecūtī sunt,** *they hoped for delay, a thing which they attained.*
4. **num eam vīdistī,** *you didn't see her, did you?*
5. **nūllae me fābulae dēlectant nisi Plautī,** *no plays delight me except those of Plautus.*
6. **exempla quaerimus et ea recentia,** *we are seeking precedents and that, too, recent ones.*
7. **nihil est liberāle quod nōn idem jūstum,** *nothing is noble which is not likewise just.*
8. **ego idem sentiō quod<sup>2</sup> tū,** *I think the same as you.*
9. **ipsa spēs eōs sustentābat,** *hope alone supported them.*



10. *ā multīs ipsa virtūs contemnitur, by many even virtue is scorned.*

11. *ipsae dēfluēbant corōnae, the garlands fell down of their own accord.*

12. *sē ipse continēre nōn potest, he cannot contain himself.*

13. *sī quid in tē peccāvī, ignōsce, if I have done you any injury, forgive me.*

14. *mulier quaedam, a certain woman.*

15. *timiditāte quādam, with a sort of shrinking.*

16. *aliquid dīvinum, something divine.*

17. *aliquis dīcet, some one will say.*

#### Notes on the Examples.

1) *Sē* illustrates the indirect reflexive.

2) The English 'same as' is regularly expressed in Latin by *idem quī*, less frequently by *īdem ac* (atque).

#### VOCABULARY.

defeat, <i>superō</i> , 1.	hope for, <i>spērō</i> , 1; governs
deliver (a speech), <i>habēō</i> , <i>ēre</i> ,	the accusative.
<i>uī</i> , <i>itus</i> .	immortality, <i>immortālītās</i> ,
depend, <i>nītor</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>nīsus</i> or	<i>ātis</i> , f.
<i>nīxus</i> ; governs the ablative.	lofty, <i>altus</i> , a, um.
elevated, <i>excelsus</i> , a, um.	weak, <i>dēbilis</i> , e.
exploits, <i>rēs gestae</i> , <i>rērum</i>	where (relative), <i>ubi</i> .
<i>gestārum</i> , f.	word, <i>verbum</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.
fear, <i>metuō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>uī</i> .	

#### EXERCISE.

1. We saw the very spot where Caesar defeated and routed the Helvetii. 2. The barbarians have injured this bridge, a thing which we greatly feared.

3. Some one will write a letter concerning the same exploits and send it to the city. 4. Certain persons had previously been informed concerning these things. 5. We set out from the borders of Gaul with one legion, and that too a weak (one). 6. Do you praise your own selves? 7. Why do you envy them? 8. Is anything more praiseworthy than steadfastness? 9. Did you not admire their<sup>1</sup> bravery? 10. Virtue has in itself something lofty and elevated. 11. (There) dwells in all a certain longing and hope for immortality. 12. The Roman soldiers depended merely upon valor.<sup>2</sup> 13. We hoped for the same things as you (did). 14. If any one shall see you here, he will admire your bravery. 15. He has delivered a speech in almost the same words as I used myself. 16. The town itself was on the top of a hill.

#### The Auxiliary Troops.

Besides the legionary soldiers, who were all Roman citizens and were heavily armed,<sup>3</sup> there were also horsemen in the Roman army. The allies furnished these. In addition there were<sup>4</sup> many light-armed soldiers,<sup>5</sup> among these, archers and slingers. These auxiliaries for the most part retained their own weapons and modes of fighting, but they were organized<sup>6</sup> into cohorts after the Roman custom.<sup>7</sup>

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *their*: this is not reflexive. Use the genitive of *is*.
2. *merely upon valor*: translate: *upon valor itself*.

3. *heavily armed*: translate: *of heavy armament*.
4. *in addition there were*: translate: *(there) were added*.
5. *light-armed soldiers*: translate: *soldiers of light armament*.
6. *organized*: use *distribuō, ere, uī, ūtus*; literally, *distribute*.
7. *after the Roman custom*: Ablative of Accordance.

## LESSON XXV.

### PRONOUNS (*continued*).

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Quisquam. 252. 4; A. & G. 312; H. 513.
2. Quisque. 252. 5; A. & G. 313 and *a*; H. 515.
3. Nēmō. 252. 6; A. & G. 314. 1, 2.
4. Alius, Alter. 253. 1-3; A. & G. 315 and *c*; H. 516 and 1.
5. Cēterī. 253. 4; A. & G. 315.
6. Reliquī. 253. 5; A. & G. 315.
7. Nesciō quis. 253. 6; A. & G. 575. *d*; H. 512. 7.
8. Uterque. 355. 2; A. & G. 313; H. 516. 4.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. nōn eguit cōsiliō cūjusquam, *he did not need the advice of any one.*
2. neque quicquam est optātius, *nor is anything more desirable.*
3. sī quicquam fierī potest, *if anything can be done.*
4. pecūnia semper ā clārissimō quōque contempta est, *money has ever been despised by all the most distinguished men, lit. by each most distinguished man.*
5. tertiō quōque verbō, *at every other word.*
6. nēmō bonus, *no good man.*
7. nēminem probat, *he approves no one.*
8. tribūnum aliī gladiīs adoriuntur, aliī fūstibus, *some attack the tribune with swords, others with clubs.*
9. alter absolūtus est, alter sē ipse condemnāvit, *the one was acquitted, the other condemned himself.*

10. *alius in aliā rē est magis ūtilis, one person is more useful in one thing, another in another.*

11. *cēteri Siculī ultōrem suārum injūriārum invēnērunt, the rest of the Sicilians found an avenger of their wrongs.*

12. *fēcērunt idem reliquī, the rest did the same.*

13. *reliqua attendite, listen to the remainder.*

14. *nesciō quō pactō, somehow or other.*

15. *excōgitāvit nesciō quid, he thought out something or other.*

16. *apud poētā nesciō quem, in some poet or other.*

17. *utraque castra bene mūnita sūnt, both camps were well fortified.*

18. *uterque hōrum, each of these.*

#### Remarks.

1. *Aliquis*, as well as *quisquam*, is used in negative sentences, though much less frequently, and with its regular force of *some one*. Thus *nōn eget cōnsiliō alicūjus* means: *he does not need the advice of some one, i.e. some individual*. This sentence is the negation of  *eget cōnsiliō alicūjus*, *he needs the advice of some individual*. *Nōn eget cōnsiliō cūjusquam*, on the other hand, constitutes a more general denial, — *he does not need the advice of anybody (at all)*.

#### VOCABULARY.

blame, *culpō*, 1.

both, *uterque*, *utraque*,  
*utrumque*.

each, *quisque*, *quaeque*,  
*quicque*; each (of two),  
*uterque*, *utraque*, *utrum-*  
*que*.

guard, *cūstōs*, *ōdis*, c.

jump down, *dēsiliō*, *īre*, *uī*.

knowledge, *scientia*, ae, f.

no (with adjectives used sub-

stantively), *nēmō*, defective; dat. *nēminī*, acc. *nēminem*.

not even, *nē . . . quidem*, with the emphatic word placed between.

opportunity, *facultās*, ātis, f. pass, passes, *angustiae*, ārum, f.

rashness, *temeritās*, ātis, f.

seamanship, *rēs nauticae*, *rē-*  
*rum nauticārum*, f.

## EXERCISE.

1. Both these passes had already been seized by the enemy a little (while) before. 2. On account of the rashness of the enemy Labienus hoped for some opportunity of battle. 3. We asked each of these (two) captives concerning the plans of the enemy. 4. Both<sup>1</sup> answered briefly.<sup>2</sup> 5. This tribe surpassed the rest of the Gauls in knowledge of seamanship. 6. The remainder of the booty was left in the other camp. 7. He was eager for another<sup>3</sup> opportunity. 8. Not even at that<sup>4</sup> time did any one withdraw from his post. 9. He called to him<sup>5</sup> the chieftains of each tribe. 10. Some blamed Caesar's acts, others praised (them). 11. He will place a guard over both of you. 12. The soldiers jumped down into the water, some from one vessel, others from another. 13. No good man will ever defend you. 14. In one place he saw our men surrounded by the enemy, in another already put to flight. 15. Somehow or other we saw no one outside the fortifications.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *Both* : use the singular of *uterque*.
2. *answered briefly* : translate : *answered a few (things)*.
3. The genitive of *alius* is *alterius*.
4. *that* : this is the emphatic word ; its Latin equivalent should stand between *nē* and *quidem*.
5. *him* : this is reflexive.

## LESSON XXVI.

### TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. The Present. 259. 1-4; A. & G. 465, 466, 467, 469; H. 532 and 1, 2, 3; 533. 1; 530.
2. The Imperfect. 260. 1-4; A. & G. 470, 471. *a-c*; H. 534 and 1, 2, 3; 535. 1; 530.
3. The Future. 261. 1, 2; A. & G. 472 and *b*; H. 536.
4. The Perfect. 262. *A* and *B*; A. & G. 473, 476; H. 537. 1, 2, 4.
5. The Pluperfect. 263; A. & G. 477; H. 539.
6. The Future Perfect. 264 and *a*; A. & G. 478; H. 540 and 2.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *dum vitant vitia, in contraria currunt, while they try to avoid (some) faults, they rush into opposite ones.*
2. *tē jam dudum hortor, I have long been urging you.*
3. *Sāturnālibus mūnera dividēbat, at the Saturnalia he used to distribute presents.*
4. *multitudō terrēbat eum clāmōre, the crowd tried to frighten him by shouting.*
5. *jam dudum flēbam, I had already long been weeping.*
6. *lēgātōs interrogābat, he kept asking the envoys.*
7. *Graeci hanc urbem tum tenēbant, the Greeks were at that time holding this city.*
8. *multās C. Caesaris virtūtēs cognōvī, I am acquainted with many virtues of Gaius Caesar.*

9. quem ad modum cōsuēvērunt, *as they are accustomed.*

10. scribam epistolam, cum redieris, *I will write the letter when you have returned.*

## VOCABULARY.

accustomed, be accustomed,	long time, <b>diū.</b>
perfect tenses of <b>cōnsuēscō,</b>	look down, <b>dēspiciō, ere,</b>
<b>ere, suēvī, suētus.</b>	<b>spexī, spectus.</b>
consult for, <b>cōnsulō, ere,</b>	low, <b>humilis, e.</b>
<b>sulūī, cōnsultus</b> ; with the	means, resources, plu. of <b>fa-</b>
dative.	<b>cultās, ātis, f.</b>
hold, <b>teneō, ēre, uī.</b>	not yet, <b>nōndum.</b>
institution, <b>īnstitūtum, ī, n.</b>	rule, <b>imperium, ī, n.</b>
language, <b>lingua, ae, f.</b>	sea, <b>mare, is, n.</b>
little, <b>paulum (ī), n.</b>	unjust, <b>injūstus, a, um.</b>

## EXERCISE.

1. He made the vessels a little lower<sup>1</sup> than (those) which we are accustomed to use on our sea. 2. This lieutenant always used to consult for the safety of his troops. 3. We were at that time holding the top of the hill and looking down into the valley. 4. We do not yet know the customs, institutions, and languages of all these tribes. 5. We had already for a long time been reminding you of these dangers. 6. Why did you not keep performing your duty? 7. He will be writing me a letter when you come to Rome. 8. Twice a year<sup>2</sup> these tribes assembled at a common council.<sup>3</sup> 9. The defenders of this town tried to keep our men away from the wall and gate.



10. Among the Belgians the regal power used to be seized by those who had large means. 11. These men have already for a long time been complaining of the unjust rule of the Roman people. 12. The Romans were not acquainted with the harbors of those districts where they were about to wage war.

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *a little lower* : i.e. *lower by a little*.
2. *twice a year* : see Lesson XXI, Example 10.
3. *at a common council* : in Latin, *to a common council*.

## LESSON XXVII.

HORTATORY, JUSSIVE, PROHIBITIVE, DELIBERATIVE, AND  
CONCESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Hortatory Subjunctive. 274; A. & G. 439; H. 559. 1.
2. Jussive Subjunctive. 275; A. & G. 439; H. 559. 2.
3. Prohibitions. 276 and c; A. & G. 450; H. 561. 1, 2.
4. Deliberative Subjunctive. 277 and a; A. & G. 444; H. 559. 4.
5. Concessive Subjunctive. 278; A. & G. 440; H. 559. 3.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *fastīdium arrogantiamque fugiāmus, let us avoid pride and arrogance.*
2. *nē difficilia optēmus, let us not wish for what is difficult.*
3. *suum quisque nōscat ingenium, let each one learn his own natural ability.*
4. *cēterōs pudeat, let the others be ashamed.*
5. *nē attingant rem pūblicam, let them not touch the state!*
6. *nōlī haec putāre, do not think this!*
7. *nōlite, jūdicēs, hunc hominem condemnāre, do not condemn this man, judges.*
8. *quid faciam, what am I to do!*
9. *quid facerem, what was I to do!*
10. *C. Cornēlium nōn dēfenderem, was I not to defend Gaius Cornelius?*
11. *mē autem quid pudeat, but why should I be ashamed!*

12. *sit hōc vērūm, granted that this is true.*

13. *nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, granting that pain is not the greatest evil, at any rate it is an evil.*

Remarks.

1. Observe that *nē* with the 2d singular present or perfect subjunctive is an unusual form of expressing a prohibition in prose, and one not to be imitated in the writing of Latin. See 276, *a, b*.

2. *Cavē, cavē nē*, with the subjunctive are likewise infrequent in standard prose. *Fac nē* is colloquial only.

VOCABULARY.

avenge, <i>ulcīscor, ī, ultus.</i>	neglect, <i>neglegō, ere, lēxī,</i>
betray, <i>prōdō, ere, didī, ditus.</i>	<i>lēctus.</i>
deed, <i>factum, ī, n.</i>	once, at once, <i>statim.</i>
deprive, <i>privō, 1.</i>	right, <i>rēctus, a, um.</i>
eagle, <i>aquila, ae, f.</i>	think, regard, <i>existimō, 1.</i>
injurious, be injurious, <i>noceō,</i>	victory, <i>victōria, ae, f.</i>
<i>ēre, uī, itūrus.</i>	while, <i>dum.</i>
know (be aware), <i>sciō, īre,</i>	win, earn, <i>mereō, ēre, uī, itus.</i>
<i>ivī, itus.</i>	

EXERCISE.

1. Let them withdraw from this place, while there is opportunity, and betake themselves to the legion.
2. Let us remember the brave deeds of our ancestors, and let us avenge these wrongs.
3. Were we not to hold this hill and keep the enemy away from the camp?
4. Do not deprive the soldiers of the prizes which they have won by their recent victories!
5. Let him not think us unworthy of confidence!
6. Why should we longer indulge this hope?
7. How was I

to know that? 8. Why should I honor those who neglect what is right and honorable<sup>1</sup>? 9. Do not, O soldiers, do those things which<sup>2</sup> are injurious both to yourselves and to your country. 10. Let each one jump down from the vessel into the water! Let no one<sup>3</sup> betray the eagle to the enemy! 11. Let them not neglect their own danger for the sake of our safety! 12. Let us withdraw at once to Vesontio and place the legions in winter quarters there!

#### Ariovistus Appears in Gaul.

Ariovistus led a multitude of Germans across the Rhine and settled them on the lands of the Sequani. Afterwards other Germans came, until there were one hundred and twenty thousand (of them) in Gaul. The more<sup>4</sup> Germans came, the more<sup>4</sup> lands the Gauls were forced to relinquish. Ariovistus had already occupied a third<sup>5</sup> of the Sequanian territory, and was ordering the Sequani to relinquish a second<sup>6</sup> third, when the Gauls in a common council sought aid from Caesar.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *what is right and honorable*: express by the neuter plural of the adjectives used substantively, — *right and honorable (things)*.

2. *those things which*: **ea quae**.

3. *no one*: in the Volitive uses of the subjunctive, *no one* is expressed by **nē quis**.

4. *the (more) . . . the (more)*: express by **quō . . . eō**. See Lesson XVIII, Example 11.

5. *third*: use *tertia pars*.

6. *second*: use *alter, a, um*.

## LESSON XXVIII.

### THE OPTATIVE AND POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE. THE IMPERATIVE.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. The Optative Subjunctive. 279. 1, 2; A. & G. 441, 442; H. 558 and 1, 2.
2. The Potential Subjunctive. 280. 1, 2, 3; A. & G. 446, 447. 1-3; H. 552, 555.
3. The Imperative. 281 and 1; A. & G. 448, 449; H. 560 and 4.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. quod dī ōmen āvertant, *may the gods avert this omen!*
2. utinam rēs pūblica stetisset, *would that the republic had stood!*
3. utinam, Quirītēs, virōrum fortium cōpiam tantam habērētis, *would, O Romans, that you had so great an abundance of brave men!*
4. quaerat quispiam, *some one may ask.*
5. dīxerit aliquis, *some one may say.*
6. vix vērissimile videātur, *it would hardly seem likely.*
7. Cicerōnem cuicumque Graecōrum fortiter opposuerim, *I should boldly match Cicero with any one of the Greeks.*
8. hōc sine ūllā dubitātiōne cōnfirmāverim, *this I should affirm without any hesitation.*
9. vidērēs, *one could see, you could have seen.*
10. in exsilium proficīscere, *go forth into exile.*
11. rem vōbis prōpōnam : vōs eam penditōte, *I will lay the matter before you : do you consider it.*

12. cōsulēs summum jū̄s habentō, *let the consuls have supreme power.*

## VOCABULARY.

answer, make answer, <b>respon-</b>	easily, <b>facile.</b>
<b>deō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus.</b>	inherit, receive, <b>accipiō, ere,</b>
bring upon, <b>īferō, ferre,</b>	<b>cēpī, ceptus.</b>
<b>ītulī, illātus</b> ; takes acc. of	linger, <b>moror, 1.</b>
direct object, and dat. of	remain vacant, <b>vacō, 1.</b>
indirect.	return, <b>reditus, ūs, m.</b>
build, <b>struō, ere, strūxī,</b>	route, <b>iter, itineris, n.</b>
<b>strūctus.</b>	short, <b>brevis, e.</b>
delay, <b>moror, 1.</b>	space, <b>spatium, ī, n.</b>
disembark, <b>ē nāvī ēgredior,</b>	storm, <b>tempestās, ātis, f.</b>
<b>ī, gressus</b> ; literally, <i>step out</i>	without, <b>sine, prep. with abl.</b>
<i>from the ship.</i>	

## EXERCISE.

1. The districts from which the Helvetii marched out shall not remain vacant! 2. Would that storms had not delayed the return of the soldiers! 3. Without great hope of victory Caesar would not have disembarked. 4. Would that another route were left to us! 5. May they not bring war on us or our allies! 6. No one would easily build so large a camp in a shorter space of time. 7. May we long enjoy these blessings. 8. No honest man would regard these soldiers (as) worthy of praise and honor. 9. May he return safe and sound from Geneva to Rome! 10. Make answer to all those things<sup>1</sup> which I shall ask you concerning this man. 11. Would that we had retained the excellent customs and strict discipline

which we inherited from our ancestors! 12. Would that you had not lingered more than three days<sup>2</sup> in the neighborhood of Geneva!

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *to those things* : **ad illa.**
2. *more than three days* : see Lesson XVI, Examples 5 and 6.

## LESSON XXIX.

### PURPOSE CLAUSES.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Purpose Clauses with *ut, nē, quō*. 282. 1. *a-e*; A. & G. 531. 1 and *a*; H. 568 and 7.
2. Relative Clauses of Purpose. 282. 2; A. & G. 531. 2; H. 590.
3. Relative Clauses with *dīgnus, indīgnus, idōneus*. 282. 3; A. & G. 535. *f*; H. 591. 7.
4. Sequence of Tenses. 267. 1-3; 268. 1, 3; A. & G. 482. 1, 2, 483, 485. *a, e*; H. 543-546.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *Lentulus in ea loca missus est, ut privātōs agrōs coēmeret, Lentulus was sent to those places to purchase private lands.*
2. *pecūniam dedit nē condemnārētur, he gave money that he might not be condemned.*
3. *portās clausit nē quam oppidānī injūriam acciperent, he closed the gates, that the townspeople might not receive any injury.*
4. *Pompējus portās obstruit, quō facilius impetum tardāret,<sup>1</sup> Pompey blocked the gates that he might the more easily impede the attack.*
5. *ut nōn ējectus ad aliēnōs sed invitātus ad tuōs videāris, that you may seem not driven out among strangers but invited to your own friends.*
6. *profūgit, nē caperētur nēve interficerētur, he fled that he might not be captured or killed.*



7. creant decem praetōrēs quī exercituī praeessent,<sup>1</sup> *they appoint ten generals to command the army.*

8. dignī sunt quī cīvitatē dōnentur, *they are worthy to be presented with citizenship.*

9. vēnī ut tē certiōrem facerem,<sup>2</sup> *I have come to inform you.*

Notes on the Examples.

- 1) Note the secondary sequence after the historical present.
- 2) Note the secondary sequence after the present perfect.

Remarks.

1. Note that the Latin uses *nē quis*, *in order that no one*; *nē quid*, *in order that nothing*; *nē ūllus*, *nē quī*, *in order that no*; similarly, *nē ūsquā*, *nē quāndō*, *nē unquam*.

2. Observe the occasional use of purpose clauses, as in English to denote the purpose with which a statement is made, as, *nē timeās*, *incolumis est*, *that you may have no fears (I will say) he is safe.*

VOCABULARY.

appoint, cōstituō, ere, uī,	imitate, imitor, 1.
ūtus.	lessen, minuō, ere, uī, ūtus.
complete, perficiō, ere, fēcī,	protect, tueor, ērī.
fectus.	say, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus.
conduct, gerō, ere, gessī,	strong, validus, a, um.
gestus.	understand, intellegō, ere,
fit, idōneus, a, um.	lēxī, lēctus.
guard, cūstōs, ōdis, c.	uprightly, honestē.
happen, accidō, ere, ī.	

EXERCISE.

1. That the barbarians might better understand our commands, we sent envoys to them.
2. The bravery

of these soldiers is worthy of your imitation.<sup>1</sup>  
3. That these dangers may be lessened, we are stationing strong guards about the camp. 4. We remained at home that these things might not happen.  
5. I sent a letter to your friend, in order to inform him concerning your departure. 6. I have always conducted myself uprightly, that you might not judge me unworthy of confidence or deprive me of your friendship. 7. The commentaries of Caesar are suitable for reading<sup>2</sup> by you all. 8. Caesar left Crassus (as) his lieutenant to complete these things. 9. I had this to say concerning the customs and institutions of the Gauls and Germans. 10. That the citizens may not fear, I have appointed guards to protect their lives and fortunes. 11. Labienus was a fit man for Caesar to place in charge of the winter quarters. 12. That no one<sup>3</sup> might be absent, I sent letters to all.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *worthy of your imitation* : i.e. *worthy for you to imitate*.
2. *suitable for reading* : i.e. *suitable to be read*.
3. *that no one* : see Remark 1.

## LESSON XXX.

CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC. CLAUSES OF RESULT.

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Simple Clauses of Characteristic. 283. 1, 2; A. & G. 535 and *a, b*; H. 591. 1, 5.

2. Clauses of Characteristic denoting Cause (*since*) or Opposition (*though*). 283. 3; A. & G. 535. *e*; H. 592 and 1; 593. 2.

3. Clauses of Characteristic introduced by *quīn*. 283. 4; A. & G. 559. 2; H. 594. II. 2, end, 595. 4.

4. Idiomatic Expressions. 283. 5; A. & G. 535. *d*; H. 591. 3.

5. Clauses of Result introduced by *ut* and *ut nōn*. 284. 1; A. & G. 537 and 1; H. 570. — For Sequence of Tenses in Result Clauses, see 268. 6; A. & G. 485. *c*; H. 550.

6. Relative Clauses of Result. 284. 2; A. & G. 537. 2; H. 591. 2.

7. Result Clauses introduced by *quīn*. 284. 3; A. & G. 559. 1; H. 594. II.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *multī inventī sunt, quī summum malum dolōrem dixerent, many have been found who declared pain the greatest ill.*

2. *quis est quī somniis pāreat, who is there that heeds dreams?*

3. *sapientia est ūna quae maestitiam pellat, philosophy is the only thing that dispels sorrow.*

4. *ō māgna vīs vēritātis quae sē ipsa dēfendat, oh the mighty power of truth, since it defends itself!*

5. *hīc quī in collēgiō sacerdotum esset, tamen est condemnātus, this man, though he was in the college of priests, was nevertheless condemned.*

6. *nūlla nātūra est quā suam vim retineat, there's no nature that doesn't retain its native force.*

7. *Epicūrus sē ūnus, quod sciam, sapientem professus est, Epicurus alone, so far as I know, set up for a philosopher.*

8. *multīs vulneribus cōfectus est ut jam sē sustinēre nōn posset, he was exhausted with many wounds, so that he could hold out no longer.*

9. *adeō plūs virtūte valuērunt ut decemplicem hostium numerum prōfligārint, they were so superior in prowess, that they routed ten times their number of the enemy.*

10. *innocentia est affectiō tālis animī quae nēmīni noceat, innocence is such a quality of the mind as to harm no one.*

11. *nēmō est tam fortis quā reī novitāte perturbētur, no one is so steadfast as not to be confused by a strange occurrence, lit. by the strangeness of an occurrence.*

## VOCABULARY.

advantage, <b>commodum</b> , <b>ī</b> , n. as not to, after <i>so, such, etc.</i> , in a negative clause, <b>quān</b> . can, be able, <b>possum, posse,</b> <b>potuī</b> . consternation, <b>perturbātiō,</b> <b>ōnis</b> , f. hinder, <b>impediō, īre, īvī</b> or <b>īī,</b> <b>ītus</b> . night, <b>nox, noctis</b> , f.	not know, <b>nesciō, īre, īvī</b> or <b>īī, ītus</b> . only, only one, only person, <b>ūnus, a, um</b> . so great, <b>tantus, a, um</b> . so many, <b>tot</b> . that, so that, <b>ut</b> ; that not, <b>ut</b> <b>nōn</b> . their, their own, <b>suus, a, um</b> . wreck (of vessels), <b>frangō, ere,</b> <b>frēgī, frāctus</b> .
---	--

## EXERCISE.

1. There are no advantages which you do not enjoy.
2. These men came in such numbers<sup>1</sup> that we could not keep them away.
3. There was no one who did not see both<sup>2</sup> of you.
4. You were the only (person) whom we judged suitable for our sons to imitate.
5. These chiefs had so great wealth that they got possession of the regal power in their own states.
6. Who is there who does not know all these things?
7. There was no one of us who did not know (it).
8. We were hindered by so many things that we did not return to camp before night.
9. You are the only one whom I judge worthy of regal power.
10. Who is so unjust as not to defend this man from cruelty?
11. There was no state so small that it did not send envoys to this council.
12. So many of Caesar's vessels were wrecked that there was great consternation on the part of<sup>3</sup> the whole army.

**Ariovistus's Justification.**

I was called<sup>4</sup> from Germany by the Gauls, in order that I might lend them assistance and ward off from them the injuries of their enemies. Besides Caesar there is no one who blames my acts. The Sequani do not object to<sup>5</sup> my authority, but regard my rule (as) so mild and just that they willingly pay the tribute which they promised. Therefore let Caesar come to me! I shall not go to him. For I have no army to which to commit<sup>6</sup> my safety.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *in such numbers*: use **tam frequēns**.
2. *both*: see Lesson XXV.
3. *on the part of*: express by the genitive case.
4. *called*: use **arcessō, ere, ivī, itus**.
5. *object to*: use **recūsō, 1**; it is transitive.
6. *to which to commit*: use Relative Clause of Purpose. For *commit*, use **committō, ere, mīsī, missus**.

## LESSON XXXI.

### CAUSAL CLAUSES. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Causal Clauses. 286. 1 and *b*; 286. 2; A. & G. 540. 1, 2; 549; H. 588. I, II, and 2; 598.
2. Temporal Clauses introduced by *postquam*, *ut*, *etc.*, denoting a single act. 287. 1; A. & G. 543; H. 602.
3. Clauses introduced by *ut*, *ubi*, *simul ac*, denoting a repeated act. 287. 2; H. 602. 2.
4. Pluperfect Indicative with *postquam*. 287. 3; H. 602. 1.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. Gallia laudētur, quod sē nōn trādīdit,<sup>1</sup> *let Gaul be praised because it did not surrender.*

2. laudātur prōvincia quod resistat<sup>2</sup> Antōniō, *the province is praised because it resists Antony.*

3. mē accūsās non quod tuīs ratiōnibus nōn assentiar sed quod nūllis, *you arraign me, not because I do not agree with your arguments, but because (I agree) with none.*

4. quae cum ita sint, *since these things are so.*

5. postquam in Hispāniam vēnit māgnās rēs gessit, *after he arrived in Spain he performed great exploits.*

6. ut Hostius cecidit, Rōmāna inclinātur aciēs, *when Hostius fell, the Roman line wavered.*

7. id ubi audīvit, cupiditāte incēnsus est, *when he heard that, he was kindled with eagerness.*

8. simul ac tē aspexī, hōc sēnsī, *as soon as I set eyes on you I observed this.*

9. ut quisque Verris animum offenderat in lautumiās coniciēbātur, *whenever anybody had offended Verres's feelings he was put in the stone-quarry.*

10. post diem tertium gesta rēs est, quam hōc dīxerat,<sup>3</sup> *the deed was done three days after he had said this.*

### Notes on the Examples.

1) The speaker's own reason, — hence the indicative.

2) Not the reason of the writer, but of those who bestow the praise, — hence the subjunctive.

3) Note the pluperfect indicative after a phrase denoting a definite interval of time (*post diem tertium*).

### VOCABULARY.

after, <b>postquam</b> .	else, <b>alius</b> , a, uđ.
angry, be angry with, <b>īrāscor</b> ,	furthest, superl. of <b>longē</b> , <i>far</i> .
ī; with dat.	hasten, <b>mātūrō</b> , 1.
as soon as, <b>simul atque (ac)</b> .	inflame, <b>incendō</b> , ere, endī,
away, be away, <b>absum</b> , esse,	ēnsus.
<b>āfuī</b> , āfutūrus.	javelin, <b>jaculum</b> , ī, n.
because, <b>quod</b> .	summon, <b>vocō</b> , 1.
drive back, <b>repellō</b> , ere, rep-	ward off, <b>dēpellō</b> , ere, <b>pulī</b> ,
<b>pulī</b> , <b>repulsus</b> .	<b>pulsus</b> .
eagerness, <b>cupiditās</b> , ātis, f.	when, as, <b>ut</b> , <b>ubi</b> .

### EXERCISE.

1. After I had heard the words of these messengers, I hastened at once to return to the army. 2. The Belgians were the bravest because they were furthest away from our province. 3. As soon as they drew



near to the wall and gates of the town, they were driven back by stones and javelins. 4. Since we saw no one else whom we knew, we summoned you to us. 5. Caesar blamed Ariovistus because he had forgotten all the favors of the Roman people. 6. The Romans, whenever they had warded off their own dangers, used to lend help to their allies and friends. 7. When he heard this, he was so inflamed with eagerness that he immediately called me to him.<sup>1</sup> 8. He asked me my opinion, not that I knew anything, but because he had no one else to consult.<sup>2</sup> 9. Eighteen days after<sup>3</sup> he had led away his army into the forests of Germany, Caesar destroyed the bridge and returned into Gaul. 10. Are you angry with us because we went away?

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *him*: use the reflexive.
2. *to consult*: use relative clause of purpose, — *whom he should consult*.
3. *eighteen days after*: = *after by eighteen days than*; see Lesson XVIII, Example 8.

## LESSON XXXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. *Cum*-Clauses. 288. 1-3; 289; A. & G. 545 and *a*, 546 and *a*, 547, 548; H. 600. I and 1, II, 601 and 2.
2. *Antequam* and *priusquam*. 291. 1, 2; 292, 1, 2; A. & G. 551. *a-c*; H. 605. I, II.
3. *Dum, donec, quoad*. 293. I-III; A. & G. 553, 554, 555, 556; H. 603, I, II, 1, 2.

### EXAMPLES.

1. an tum erās cōsul, cum in Palātiō mea domus ārdēbat, *or were you then consul, when my house burned up on the Palatine?*

2. cum dē templō ēlātus esset, animam efflāvit, *when he had been carried out of the temple, he expired, lit. breathed out his life.*

3. jam Gallī fugere apparābant, cum matrēs familiae repente prōcurrērunt, *the Gauls were just preparing to flee, when the matrons suddenly rushed forth.*

4. neque, cum aliquid mandārat, cōnfectum putābat, *nor when he had allotted any task, did he think it finished.*

5. cum veniēs, cognōscēs, *when you come, you will learn.*

6. antequam ad causam redeō, dē mē pauca dicam, *before I come back to the case, I will say a few things concerning myself.*

7. nōn prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, *they did not cease to flee before they reached the Rhine.*

8. *antequam veniat, litterās mittet, before he comes, he will send a letter, i.e. he will send a letter in anticipation of his coming.*

9. *antequam verbum facerem, abiit, he left before I uttered a word.*

10. *dum haec geruntur, ceterī discesserunt, while these things were being done, the rest withdrew.*

11. *Lacedaemoniōrum gēns fortis fuit, dum Lycūrgī lēgēs vigēbant, the race of the Spartans was hardy as long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force.*

12. *dōnec rediit, fuit silentium, there was silence till he came.*

13. *exspectāvit Caesar, dum nāvēs convenirent, Caesar waited for the ships to assemble.*

## VOCABULARY.

as long as, **dum**.

attack, **adorior, irī, ortus**.

attempt, **cōnor, 1**.

before, **antequam, priusquam**.

cease, **dēsistō, ere, dēstitī**.

depart, **dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus**.

faction, **factiō, ōnis, f**.

flight, **fuga, ae, f**.

go forth, **exeō, ire, exiī, itūrus**.

last, continue, **dūrō, 1**.

once, **quondam**.

rear, **novissimum agmen, novissimī agminis, n. ; literally, last column**.

sight, **cōnspectus, ūs, m**.

silent, become silent, **taceō, ēre, uī**.

until, **dum, dōnec, quoad**.

## EXERCISE.

1. When the Helvetii had gone forth from home many years before, they defeated the army of the consul Cassius.<sup>1</sup> 2. They did not cease to follow the enemy until (before) they came to this river. 3. Be-

fore we attempt anything else, we will summon Divitiacus and his brother to us. 4. They did not desist from flight before they came in sight<sup>2</sup> of our camp. 5. There was once a time when the Gauls surpassed the Germans in valor. 6. At the time when<sup>3</sup> Caesar came into Gaul there were two factions. 7. When he saw this, he quickly became silent. 8. When the envoys had said this, they departed. 9. Whenever they came to a river, they built<sup>4</sup> a bridge. 10. The troops had not yet crossed this river, when the cavalry of the enemy attacked their rear. 11. Scipio will be praised as long as the memory of the Roman state lasts.<sup>5</sup> 12. While the enemy were crossing this river, the horsemen attacked their rear. 13. Here he remained three days, until the rest of the legions should arrive.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *the consul Cassius* : in Latin: *Cassius, the consul.*
2. *in sight* : translate: *into sight.*
3. *at the time when* : use *cum* alone with the proper mood and tense.
4. *built* : use *faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.*
5. *lasts* : use the future tense.

## LESSON XXXIII.

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Substantive Clauses developed from the Jussive. 295. 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 8; *cf.* A. & G. 563, and *c, d, e*, 565; H. 564. I, II and 1.
2. Substantive Clauses developed from the Deliberative. 295. 7; 298; *cf.* A. & G. 558. *a*; II. 595. 1, 591. 4.
3. Substantive Clauses after verbs of *hindering, preventing, etc.* 295. 3; A. & G. 558. *b*; H. 595. 2, 596. 2.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *vōs ōrō nē id faciātis, I beg you not to do that.*
2. *populus Rōmānus permittit ut cīvitāte dōnentur, the Roman people allows them to be presented with citizenship.*
3. *senātus dēcernit ut frūmentum emātur, the Senate decrees that grain be purchased.*
4. *labōrābam nē testēs dīcerent, I strove that the witnesses should not speak.*
5. *reliquum est ut hōc doceam, it remains for me to show this.*
6. *licet redeās, you may return.*
7. *oportet loquāmur, we ought to speak.*
8. *maneāt necesse est, it is necessary for him to remain.*
9. *nōn fuit causa cūr postulārēs, there was no reason why you should ask.*

10. nihil causae est quā ita iudicētis, *there's no reason why you shouldn't decide thus.*

11. nōn dubitō quā hōc vērū sit, *I do not doubt that this is true.*

12. plūra nē dīcam tuae lacrimae mē impediunt, *your tears prevent me from saying more.*

13. prohibuit quōminus in ūnum coīrent, *he prevented them from coming together.*

14. nec quā ērumperet prohibērī poterat, *nor could he be prevented from rushing forth.*

#### Remarks.

1. Licet and oportet take either the infinitive, or the subjunctive without ut, but the infinitive is the commoner construction, especially with licet; necesse est admits either construction.

2. Cōstituō, when denoting another act of the same subject, more commonly takes an infinitive than an ut-clause.

3. Prohibeō is much more commonly construed with an infinitive than with a Substantive Clause introduced by nē, quō minus, or quā, e.g. sī quī tē introīre prohibuerit, *if any one should prevent your entering.* In Cicero and Caesar prohibeō never occurs followed by a quā-clause, though it may take quō minus.

4. Impediō quā does not occur in Cicero's speeches or philosophical works, though impediō quō minus is frequent.

5. In general, after negative expressions of *hindering*, quō minus is often used in preference to quā.

#### VOCABULARY.

avoid, vitō, 1.

beg, orō, 1.

colony, colōnia, ae, f.

contrary to, against, contrā,  
prep. with acc.

doubt, dubitō, 1.

extend (thanks), agō, ere, ēgī,  
āctus.

go away, abeō, ire, īi, itūrus.

necessary, it is necessary, ne-  
cesse est.

order, <b>mandātum</b> , ī, n.	send back, <b>remittō</b> , ere, <b>mīsī</b> , <b>missus</b> . settler, <b>colōnus</b> , ī, m. thanks, <b>grātiae</b> , ārum, f. why . . . not, <b>quīn</b> .
prevent, <b>prohibeō</b> , ēre, uī, <b>itus</b> .	
reason, <b>causa</b> , ae, f.	

## EXERCISE.

1. I demanded<sup>1</sup> that you should send these messengers back to me. 2. There is no reason why we should not go away immediately. 3. Who doubts that these things are so? 4. I begged you, O soldiers, not to forget<sup>2</sup> my orders. 5. What reason is there why these two brothers should not lead a colony into Hither Gaul? 6. We advised you to avoid<sup>3</sup> suspicion of treason. 7. Caesar demanded that Ariovistus should not injure the Haedui or their allies. 8. We decided that no one<sup>4</sup> should remain here longer. 9. We prevented these barbarians from marching<sup>5</sup> into the fertile districts near the province.<sup>6</sup> 10. It is necessary that we adjudge these men enemies. 11. By whom were you prevented from waging war? 12. Did you permit the soldiers<sup>7</sup> to occupy the lands of these settlers? 13. Who will doubt that these things were done contrary to law? 14. You ordained that thanks should be extended to our allies. 15. You decreed that no one<sup>4</sup> should prevent us from holding these lands.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *demanded*: use **postulō**.
2. *not to forget*: translate, *that you should not forget; that . . . not must be rendered by nō*.

3. *to avoid* : translate : *that you avoid*.
4. *that no one* : in Latin : *that not any one*, *nē quis*.
5. See Remark 3.
6. *near the province* : translate *near* by *finitimus*, which takes the dative.
7. *the soldiers* : use the dative in translating this.



## LESSON XXXIV.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES (*continued*).

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Substantive Clauses developed from the Optative. 296 entire; cf. A. & G. 563. *b*, 564; H. 565.
2. Substantive Clauses of Result. 297. 1-3; A. & G. 569. 1, 2, 570, 571; H. 571. 1-4.
3. Substantive Clauses introduced by *quod*. 299. 1, 2; A. & G. 572 and *a*; H. 588. 3.

### EXAMPLES.

1. optō ut hōc audiātis, *I desire that you hear this.*
2. vīsne hōc primum videāmus,<sup>1</sup> *do you wish that we consider this first?*
3. velim<sup>2</sup> scrībās,<sup>1</sup> *I wish you would write.*
4. vellem<sup>3</sup> scrīberēs,<sup>1</sup> *I wish you were writing.*
5. vellem scrīpsissēs,<sup>1</sup> *I wish you had written.*
6. verēbar, nē animōs vestrōs offenderem, *I was afraid that I should offend your feelings.*
7. veritus est ut hostium impetum sustinēre posset, *he feared that he could not withstand the attack of the enemy.*
8. nōn vereor nē nōn<sup>4</sup> tē expleam, *I am not afraid that I shall not satisfy you.*
9. gravitās morbī facit ut medicīnā egeāmus, *the severity of disease makes us need medicine.*
10. accidit ut venīret, *it happened that he came.*
11. accēdēbat ut nāvēs deessent, *another consideration was the lack of boats, lit. it was added that boats were lacking.*

12. est hōc commūne vitium ut invidia glōriæ comes sit, *this is a common evil, that Envy is the attendant of Glory.*

13. mirābile vidētur, quod rediit, *it seems wonderful, that he came back.*

14. bene fēcistī quod mānsistī, *you did well, that you staid.*

#### Notes on the Examples.

1) Note the absence of *ut*, as regularly after *vīsno*, *velim*, *vellem*.

2) *Velim* is potential subjunctive; the present implies that the wish contained in the object clause is one capable of realization.

3) *Vellem* is likewise a potential subjunctive; the imperfect implies regret at the unreality of the object clause.

4) Note the use of *nē nōn* (instead of *ut*) after a main clause containing a negative.

#### VOCABULARY.

added, it is added, <b>accēdit</b> ,	happen, it happens, <b>accidit</b> ,
<b>ere</b> , <b>cessit</b> , impersonal.	<b>ere</b> , <b>it</b> , impersonal.
afraid, be afraid, <b>timeō</b> , <b>ēre</b> ,	have, <b>habeō</b> , <b>ēre</b> , <b>uī</b> , <b>itus</b> .
<b>uī</b> .	onset, <b>impetus</b> , <b>ūs</b> , <b>m</b> .
Britons, <b>Britannī</b> , <b>ōrum</b> , <b>m</b> .	so, <b>sic</b> .
chariot, war-chariot, <b>essedum</b> ,	suddenly, <b>subitō</b> .
<b>ī</b> , <b>n</b> .	till, <b>ad</b> , prep. with acc.
desert, <b>dēserō</b> , <b>ere</b> , <b>uī</b> , <b>sertus</b> .	vengeance, take vengeance on,
desire, <b>optō</b> , <b>l</b> .	<b>ulcīscor</b> , <b>ī</b> , <b>ultus</b> .
fear, <b>vereor</b> , <b>ērī</b> , <b>itus</b> .	wish, <b>volō</b> , <b>velle</b> , <b>voluī</b> .

#### EXERCISE.

1. It happened that we suddenly entered upon a new plan. 2. Another fact was<sup>1</sup> that the horsemen, whom he was awaiting, had not yet arrived. 3. I was afraid that you, O soldiers, would not be able

to withstand the onset of the enemy. 4. It was the custom of the Britons to fight with chariots.<sup>2</sup> 5. They feared that Caesar would take vengeance upon them.<sup>3</sup> 6. We desire that you should choose men worthy to be sent.<sup>4</sup> 7. I wish my father had lived till this day. 8. In time of war<sup>5</sup> it often happens that women and children undergo greater hardships than the soldiers themselves. 9. I wish you would ask your brother not to desert<sup>6</sup> us. 10. It so happened that the general had already sent a letter from camp to the Senate at Rome.<sup>7</sup> 11. I do not fear that he will be angry with me. 12. I wish we had more friends.

#### Panic of the Romans at Vesontio.

Caesar's soldiers were in great panic<sup>8</sup> at Vesontio, since they had heard from Gallic traders of<sup>9</sup> the fierce looks of the Germans and the size of (their) frames. There were (some) in the camp who were so much afraid that they even made their wills. But when Caesar made a speech<sup>10</sup> before<sup>11</sup> the soldiers, and urged them to lay aside their fears and to be of good courage, their spirits<sup>12</sup> were altered and they began to desire<sup>13</sup> battle.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *Another fact was*: translate by *accēdēbat*; literally, *it was added*.

2. *with chariots*: Ablative of Means.

3. *them*: use the reflexive.

4. See Lesson XXIX.

5. *in war* : express by **in** with the ablative.
6. *not to desert* : Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive.
7. *to the Senate at Rome* : see Lesson VII, Example 8.
8. *panic* : use **pavor, ōris, m.**
9. *heard of* : **audiō** means *hear of*, as well as *hear*.
10. *made a speech* : **ōrātiōnem habēre** (*to hold a discourse*), is the Latin idiom for 'deliver a speech.'
11. *before* : **ad.**
12. *spirits* : use **mōns, mentis, f.**
13. *desire* : use **cupiō, ere, ivī, itus.**

## LESSON XXXV.

### INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Simple Questions. 300. 1-3; A. & G. 574, 575. *b*, 576. *a*; H. 649. II.
2. Double Questions. 300. 4; *cf.* A. & G. 334, 335. *d*; H. 650. 1, 2.
3. *Haud sciō an, nesciō an.* 300. 5; A. & G. 575. *d*; H. 650. 4.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *quā celeritāte haec gesta sint, vidētis, you see with what rapidity these things have been achieved.*

2. *quaeret ā mē ubi sit pecūnia, he will inquire of me where the money is.*

3. *exquīre num quid scripserit, ask whether he has written anything.*

4. *nesciō cūr hōc putēs, I do not know why you think this.*

5. *rogāvī pervēnissentne Agrigentum, I asked whether they had come to Agrigentum.*

6. *quaerō ā tē nōnne putēs, I ask of you whether you do not think.*

7. *nesciō quō mē vertam, I do not know whither to turn (direct: quō vertam, whither am I to turn?).*

8. *hanc palūdem sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant, the enemy were waiting (to see) whether our men would cross this marsh.*

9. quaerō utrum vērum an falsum sit, }  
 10. quaerō vērumne an falsum sit, } *I ask whether it is*  
 11. quaerō vērum an falsum sit, } *true or false.*  
 12. quaerō vērum falsumne sit, }  
 13. dī utrum sint necne quaeritur, *it is asked whether there*  
*are gods or not.*  
 14. haud sciō an mālim, *I am inclined to think I prefer.*

## Remarks.

1. To denote future time in indirect questions, periphrastic forms are used where ambiguity would otherwise result; as, *nōn quaerō quid dictūrus sis, I do not ask what you will say.*

2. *Nōnne* in indirect questions is used only after *quaerō*; see the 6th example above.

3. In indirect double questions *necne* is commonly used to express *or not*; *annōn* is much less frequent.

## VOCABULARY.

ask, inquire of, <b>quaerō, ere,</b>	inquire, <b>quaerō, ere, quae-</b>
<b>quaesivī, itus.</b>	<b>sivī, itus.</b>
burn (of things), <b>combūrō,</b>	or not (whether) . . . or not,
<b>ere, ussī, ūstus</b> ; (of per-	in indirect questions, <b>necne.</b>
sons), <b>cremō, 1.</b>	whether, <b>num</b> ; <b>-ne.</b>
deliberate, <b>dēlibērō, 1.</b>	whether . . . not, <b>nōnne.</b>
hand, be on hand, <b>suppetō,</b>	whether . . . or, <b>utrum . . .</b>
<b>ere, ivī</b> or <b>īi, itum.</b>	<b>an.</b> See also other modes
how much, <b>quantum</b> ; with	of expression given in the
Gen. of the Whole.	grammar.
inclined to think, <b>haud sciō an.</b>	wonder, <b>mīror, 1.</b>

## EXERCISE.

1. I asked you how many envoys came and what each said. 2. Who will inform us whether this town

has already been captured? 3. I do not know whether I approve this plan or not. 4. He inquired of<sup>1</sup> me how long I had remained at home. 5. They deliberated in common council whether they should burn the ships or defend (them). 6. He does not know of whom to ask<sup>2</sup> assistance. 7. Do you know whether the Germans burned Procillus or spared him? 8. I do not ask what reason impelled you. 9. Why does it concern us<sup>3</sup> whether a colony was led to that place<sup>4</sup> or not? 10. I was waiting (to see) if you would write me anything concerning your brother. 11. I will now ask whether you did not linger more than three days at Bibracte. 12. I am inclined to think I regard this plan (as) better. 13. I do not know how much grain is on hand. 14. I wonder how you found the place.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *of*:  $\bar{a}$ ,  $d\bar{e}$ , or  $\bar{e}$ .
2. *of whom to ask*: translate: *of whom he shall ask*.
3. *concern us*: see Lesson XIV, Examples 16, 18.
4. *to that place*: express by the adverb  $ill\bar{o}$ .

## LESSON XXXVI.

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. First Type. Nothing Implied. 302. 1-4; A. & G. 515 and *a*; 518. *a, b*; 516. *a*; H. 574 and 2, 580. 1.

2. Second Type. Supposed Case Contingent (*should . . . would*). 303; A. & G. 516. *b*; H. 576.

3. Third Type. Contrary to Fact. 304 entire; A. & G. 517 and *a, c, d*; H. 579 and 1, 582, 583.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *sī hōc dīcis, errās, if you say this, you are mistaken.*

2. *sī hōc dīcēbās, errābās, if you were saying this, you were mistaken.*

3. *sī hōc dīcēs, errābis, if you say (i.e. shall say) this, you will be mistaken.*

4. *sī hōc dīxistī, errāvistī, if you said this, you were mistaken.*

5. *memoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceās, memory grows weak unless you exercise it.*

6. *sī quis equitum dēciderat, peditēs circumsistēbant, if any one of the horsemen fell, the foot-soldiers gathered around him.*

7. *sī virī sumus, hic maneāmus, if we are men, let us remain here!*

8. *sī hōc dīcās, errēs,* } *If you should say this, you*  
9. *sī hōc dīxeris, errāveris,* } *would be mistaken.*



10. *sī hōc dīcerēs, errārēs, if you were saying this, you would be mistaken.*

11. *sī hōc dīxissēs, errāvissēs, if you had said this, you would have been mistaken.*

12. *dēlērī potuit exercitus, sī quis aggressus esset, the army could have been wiped out, if any one had attacked it, lit. was able to be wiped out.*

13. *eum patris locō colere dēbēbās, sī ūlla in tē pietās esset, you ought to revere him as a father, if you had in you any sense of devotion.*

14. *sī Pompējus occīsus esset, fuistisne ad arma itūrī, if Pompey had been slain, would you have proceeded to arms ?*

VOCABULARY.

despair of, **dēspērō**, 1; governs the accusative.

help, **juvō**, **āre**, **jūvī**, **jūtus**.

how great, **quantus**, **a**, **um**.

inhabitant, **incola**, **ae**, **m**.

learn, **discō**, **ere**, **didicī**.

listen, listen to, **audiō**, **īre**,

**ivī** or **iī**, **itus**; governs the accusative.

refuse, **respuō**, **ere**, **uī**.

terms, conditions, **condiciōnēs**, **um**, **f.**, **plu.** of **condiciō**.

visit, **adeō**, **īre**, **iī**, **itus**.

EXERCISE.

1. If you quickly fortify a camp, it will not be necessary that we leave this place at once. 2. It will be of great advantage<sup>1</sup> to us, if we visit this island and learn the customs of the inhabitants. 3. If he refuses our terms, let us not delay longer, but at once bring war upon him. 4. I should approve this plan, unless I saw a better (one). 5. If he forgets what he has promised us, I shall despair of safety. 6. I should not have sent you to him, if I had under-

stood how great the dangers were. 7. If you listen to my words, you will understand how great a kindness you received from me. 8. If he should beg us to help him, what would you reply? 9. They could have freed<sup>2</sup> this town from siege, if they had not lost all their grain and supplies. 10. Be of good courage,<sup>3</sup> if you hope for victory.

#### Conference of Ariovistus and Caesar.

After Ariovistus had once refused a conference, he finally granted (one). The two leaders met in the midst of a plain near a hillock, each attended<sup>4</sup> by a band<sup>5</sup> of horsemen. At<sup>6</sup> this conference Caesar earnestly demanded that Ariovistus should send back all hostages to the Gauls and lead no more<sup>7</sup> Germans across the Rhine. These demands Ariovistus rejected. If he had granted them, he would have avoided war.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *of great advantage*: *māgnō ūsuī*, literally, *for great service*.
2. *could have freed*: see Example 12.
3. *of good courage*: see Lesson XVIII, Example 15.
4. *attended*: the perfect participle of *comitor* may be here used.
5. *by a band*: the simple ablative should be used here.
6. *At*: use *in*.
7. *no more*: *neu plūrēs*; compare Lesson XXIX, Example 6.

## LESSON XXXVII.

USE OF **nisi**, **sī nōn**, **sīn**. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF  
COMPARISON.

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. *Nisi, sī nōn, sīn.* 306 entire; cf. A. & G. 525. a. 1, 2, d; H. 575. 2, 4, 5, 7.
2. Conditional Clauses of Comparison. 307. 1, 2; A. & G. 524 and N. 2; H. 584 and 1, 2.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *hōc enim nōn facerem, nisi necesse esset, for I should not be doing this unless it were necessary.*
2. *etiam sī vir bonus nōn esset, even if he were NOT a good man.*
3. *dolōrem sī nōn potuerō frangere, tamen occultābō, if I cannot subdue my grief, yet I will hide it.*
4. *sī futūrum est, fiet; sī nōn futūrum est, nōn fiet, if it is destined to be, it will be; if it is not destined, it will not be.*
5. *hōc sī assecūtus sum, gaudeō; sī minus, mē cōnsōlor, if I have attained this, I am glad; if not, I console myself.*
6. *haec sī dicēs, tenēbere; sīn alia dicēs, mē nōn refūtābis, if you say this, you will be caught; but if you say something else, you will not refute my statements.*
7. *nihil quaesivit nisi iūstitiam, he sought nothing but justice.*
8. *nisi vērō nōn hostem Antōnium iūdicāvistis, unless indeed you did not consider Antony an enemy.*

9. *nōmen petis quasi incertum sit, you ask for the name as if it were uncertain.*

10. *hōc locō sedēbat, quasi reus ipse esset, he sat in this place as if he were himself under accusation.*

11. *ita loquor quasi ego illud fēcērim, I speak as though I had done that.*

## VOCABULARY.

<p>ancient, pristine, <b>prīstinus, a, um.</b></p> <p>as if, as though, <b>quasi.</b></p> <p>begin, join (of battle), <b>com-mittō, ere, mīsī, missus.</b></p> <p>but if, <b>sīn.</b></p> <p>courageously, <b>fortiter.</b></p> <p>if not, <b>sī minus</b>, when the verb of the conditional clause is omitted.</p>	<p>near, <b>prope</b>, prep. with acc.</p> <p>owe, <b>dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus.</b></p> <p>pay, <b>solvō, ere, solvī, solūtus.</b></p> <p>prepare for, <b>parō, 1.</b></p> <p>proceed, <b>pergō, ere, perrēxī, rēctum.</b></p> <p>treachery, <b>perfidia, ae, f.</b></p> <p>unless, <b>nisi</b>; unless indeed, <b>nisi vērō.</b></p>
---	---

## EXERCISE.

1. Unless you withdraw from this place, I shall regard you not (as) a friend, but an enemy. 2. If you make peace with us, we will return home; but if you proceed to bring war upon us, remember our ancient valor! 3. Do not begin<sup>1</sup> battle, unless our forces have been seen<sup>2</sup> near the camp of the enemy. 4. If he comes with cavalry, we shall not despair of victory; if he does not come, not even Fortune herself can save us. 5. If he pays me the money which he owes, I will come; if not, I will remain at home. 6. In the city, the Romans courageously prepared for war, as though they had not just<sup>3</sup> lost two consuls and

a large army. 7. You speak as though we had not all undergone<sup>4</sup> the greatest hardships. 8. We shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus, as if he were present. 9. You are unworthy of honor, unless indeed treachery and cowardice deserve to be praised.<sup>5</sup>

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *Do not begin* : see Lesson XXVII, Examples 6 and 7.
2. *have been seen* : use the future perfect.
3. *just* : **paulō ante**, or **modo**.
4. *had not undergone* : note the proper tense. See Example 11.
5. *deserve to be praised* : use the passive periphrastic conjugation.

## LESSON XXXVIII.

SUBORDINATE ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY  
*quamvis, quamquam, etc.* PROVISOS.

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Subordinate Adversative Clauses. 309. 1-5; A. & G. 527 and *a-e*; H. 585, 586. I, II.
2. Provisos. 310. II; A. & G. 528; H. 587.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *quod turpe est, id quamvis occultetur, non honestum fit, what is base does not become honorable, even though it be hidden.*
2. *quamvis amplum sit, parum est, however extensive it be, it is too little.*
3. *Romani, quamquam itinere fessi erant, tamen procedunt, though the Romans were weary with marching, yet they advanced.*
4. *etsi nunquam dubium fuit, though it was never doubtful.*
5. *Atticus honores non petiit, cum ei paterent, Atticus did not seek honors, though they were open to him.*
6. *quamquam quid loquor, and yet why do I talk?*
7. *magnam me metu liberabis dum modo inter me atque te murus intersit, you will relieve me of a great fear, provided only there be a wall between you and me.*
8. *id faciat saepe dum ne lassus fiat, let him do that often, provided he does not become tired.*
9. *manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat industria, old men's faculties continue, provided only industry remains.*

Remarks.

1. *Etsī*, *although*, is carefully to be distinguished from *etsī*, *even if*; the latter is a conditional particle and takes any of the constructions admissible for *sī*; see Lesson XXXVI.

VOCABULARY.

and yet, <b>quamquam</b> ; <b>etsī</b> . eight hundred, <b>octingentī</b> , <b>ae</b> , a. fear, <b>metus</b> , <b>ūs</b> , m. finally, <b>postrēmō</b> . mainland, <b>continēns</b> , <b>entis</b> , f. may, it is permitted, <b>licet</b> , <b>licēre</b> , <b>licuit</b> , with the sub- junctive.	nevertheless, <b>tamen</b> . provided, <b>dum</b> ; provided only, <b>dum modo</b> . put, place, <b>pōnō</b> , <b>ere</b> , <b>posuī</b> , <b>positus</b> . remain in charge, <b>praesum</b> , <b>esse</b> , <b>fuī</b> ; governs the dative. though, <b>quamquam</b> , <b>quamvis</b> . yet, <b>tamen</b> .
---	--

EXERCISE.

1. Although these tribes had sent messengers to the mainland and had sought peace of us, yet, after we arrived in Britain, they brought war upon us. 2. Although our men were deserted by their leader, yet they put all hope of safety in valor. 3. Though we should learn nothing concerning these tribes, nevertheless let us visit them! 4. Provided only he does not lead his soldiers from the province to Rome, he may remain in charge of his army. 5. And yet I am not afraid that he will do us harm. 6. Although the Germans had not more than eight hundred horsemen, they routed five thousand Roman cavalry. 7. Provided you come soon with an army, you will relieve

this city of fear<sup>1</sup> of siege. 8. Although he had undergone so many hardships, Procillus finally escaped unharmed.

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *of fear*: express by the ablative.



## LESSON XXXIX.

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

##### MOODS.

1. Declaratory Sentences. 314. 1, 3; 331. I; A. & G. 580; H. 642, 643. 3, 4.
2. Interrogative Sentences. 315. 1-3; A. & G. 586, 587; H. 642 and 2, 3.
3. Imperative Sentences. 316 and *a*; A. & G. 588 and *a*; H. 642.

##### TENSES.

1. Of the Infinitive. 317 and *a*; A. & G. 584 and *a*; H. 644, 617.
2. Of the Subjunctive. 318 and *a*; A. & G. 585 and *a*; H. 644.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *Ariovistus respondit sēsē nōn esse ventūrum, Ariovistus replied that he would not come. (Direct: nōn veniam.)*

2. *Rēgulus dīxit quam diū jūre jūrandō hostium tenērētur nōn esse sē senātōrem, Regulus said that so long as he was held by his oath to the enemy he was not a senator. (Direct: quam diū . . . teneor, nōn sum senātor.)*

3. *referunt, esse silvam īnfīnitā māgnitūdine, quae Bacēnis appellātur, they bring back word that there is a forest of limitless extent, which is called Bacenis. (The direct statement here is est silva; the clause quae appellātur is an addition of the writer.)*

4. Caesarī respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? *he answered Caesar that he had come into Gaul before the Roman people. What did he want? Why did he come into his domain?* (Direct: ego prius vēnī. Quid vīs? Cūr venīs?)

5. sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium injūriārum memoriam sē dēpōnere posse, *if he were willing to forget the former indignity, could he also banish the recollection of recent wrongs?* (Direct: sī velim, num possum?)

6. quid metueret, *what (said he) had he to fear?* (Direct: quid metuam.)

7. dīxit illī irent ad cōpiās, *let them, he said, go to their troops.* (Direct: vōs ite.)

8. sciō tē haec ēgisse,	{	<i>I know you were doing this.</i> (Direct: agēbās.)
		<i>I know you did this.</i> (Direct: ēgistī.)
		<i>I know you had done this.</i> (Direct: ēgerās.)

9. videor ostendisse quālēs deī essent, *I seem to have shown of what nature the gods are.* (Direct: ostendī.)

#### Remarks.

1. Note that a dependent perfect infinitive is treated as an historical tense whenever, if resolved into an equivalent indicative, it would be historical. See the last example above.

2. Note that for the sake of vividness a present tense of the direct discourse is not infrequently retained in the indirect after an historical tense. This is called *repraesentātiō*, 'a bringing back to the present.'

#### VOCABULARY.

announce, *nūntiō*, 1.

appoint (a dictator), *dīcō*, *ere*,

*dīxī*, *dīctus*.

approach, *adventus*, *ūs*, m.

bring back word, report, *referō*,

*ferre*, *rettulī*, *relātus*.

conspire, <b>conjūrō</b> , 1.	hostage, <b>obses</b> , <b>idis</b> , m.
crush, <b>opprimō</b> , <b>ere</b> , <b>pressī</b> ,	
<b>pressus</b> .	
dictator, <b>dictātor</b> , <b>ōris</b> , m.	
hide, <b>cēlō</b> , 1.	
	number, <b>numerus</b> , <b>ī</b> , m.
	plough, <b>arō</b> , 1.
	twenty, <b>vīgintī</b> .

**EXERCISE.**

1. Crassus knew that he was waging war in those places where a few years before a Roman army had been routed and a lieutenant had been slain. 2. This deserter said that Caesar was in great danger, and that the Veneti would crush his army. 3. We understand that these tribes have surrendered all the arms which they had hidden, and are now seeking peace. 4. Caesar promised the Ubii that he would come and help<sup>1</sup> them. 5. We were informed that the leaders of the Belgians were conspiring and giving hostages to each other.<sup>2</sup> 6. We read that Cincinnatus was ploughing when it was announced to him that he had been appointed dictator. 7. He said to the soldiers that the place was suitable for a battle; let each (man) perform his duty, and not<sup>3</sup> forget the glory of the Roman name. 8. These scouts brought back word that when the Gauls<sup>4</sup> had been informed of Caesar's approach they left the villages, which were twenty in number, and fled into the woods.

**The Battle with Ariovistus.**

The two armies had encamped<sup>5</sup> near the Rhine in the territory of the Sequani. Ariovistus, whose

forces were larger, led his (men) past the camp of the Romans, in order to cut them off from supplies. When Caesar offered battle to the Germans,<sup>6</sup> Ariovistus at first refused<sup>7</sup> to fight, but finally attacked the Roman camp. The Romans withstood this assault and then advanced themselves against the Germans, whom they soon routed and pursued to the Rhine. Only a very few escaped.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *help*: the future active participle of *juvō* is *juvātūrus*.
2. *to each other*: *inter sē*.
3. See Lesson XXIX, Example 6.
4. *that when the Gauls*: in Latin: *that the Gauls, when they,* etc.; B. 354, 2.
5. *had encamped*: translate: *had pitched camp*.
6. *offered battle to the Germans*: translate: *harassed the Germans by battle* (*proeliō lacessere*).
7. *refused*: translate: *was unwilling* (*nōlō*).

## LESSON XL.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse. 319-322 entire; A. & G. 589 entire; H. 646, 647.

### EXAMPLES.

NOTE.—The direct form is given first in parenthesis.

(*sī hōc crēdis, errās, if you believe this, you are wrong.*)

1. *dīcō tē, sī hōc crēdās, errāre, I say that, if you believe this, you are wrong.*

2. *dīxī tē, sī hōc crēderēs, errāre, I said that, if you believed this, you were wrong.*

(*sī hōc crēdēs, errābis, if you believe (i.e. shall believe) this, you will be wrong.*)

3. *dīcō tē, sī hōc crēdās, errātūrum esse, I say that if you believe (i.e. shall believe) this, you will be wrong.*

4. *dīxī tē, sī hōc crēderēs, errātūrum esse, I said that if you should believe this, you would be wrong.*

(*sī hōc crēdideris, errābis, if you shall have believed this, you will be wrong.*)

5. *dīcō tē, sī hōc crēdideris, errātūrum esse, I say that if you shall have believed this, you will be wrong.*

6. *dīxī tē, sī hōc crēdidissēs, errātūrum esse, I said that, if you should have believed this, you would be wrong.*

(*sī hōc crēdās, errēs, if you should believe this, you would be wrong.*)

7. *dīcō tē, sī hōc crēdās, errātūrum esse, I say that if you should believe this, you would be wrong.*

8. *dīxī tē, sī hōc crēderēs, errātūrum esse, I said that, if you should believe this, you would be wrong.*

(*sī hōc crēderēs, errārēs, if you were believing this, you would be in error.*)

9. *dīcō (dīxī) tē, sī hōc crēderēs, errātūrum esse, I say (said) that, if you were believing this, you would be wrong.*

(*sī hōc crēdidissēs, errāvissēs, if you had believed this, you would have been wrong.*)

10. *dīcō (dīxī) tē, sī hōc crēdidissēs, errātūrum fuisse, I say (said) that, if you had believed this, you would have been wrong.*

(*sī hōc dīxissēs, pūnītus essēs, if you had said this, you would have been punished.*)

11. *dīcō (dīxī) sī hōc dīxissēs, futūrum fuisse ut pūnīrēris, I say (said) that, if you had said this, you would have been punished, lit. it would have happened that you should be punished.*

12. *nōn dubitō quīn, sī hōc dīxissēs, errātūrus fueris, I do not doubt that if you had said this, you would have been wrong.*

13. *quaerō, num, sī hōc dīxissēs, errātūrus fueris, I ask whether you would have made a mistake, if you had said this.*

14. *tam ācritēr pūgnātum est ut sī equitēs adfuissent castra capī potuerint, the fighting was so fierce that, if the cavalry had been present, the camp could have been taken.*

#### VOCABULARY.

advice, *cōnsilium*, *ī*, *n.*

believe, *crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditus.*

declare, *dēclārō*, *ī*.

emigrate, *ēmigrō*, *ī*.

labor, labor, *ōris*, *m.*

necessary, *necessārius*, *a, um.*

resources, *opēs*, *um, f.*

secure, procure, *parō*, *ī*.

## EXERCISE.

1. These envoys declare that unless we lend help to the Gauls they will all emigrate from home and seek new abodes. 2. I believe that if they should secure the necessary resources, they would march out and bring war upon us. 3. He says that if the enemy had got possession of this bridge, they would have cut us off from supplies. 4. Do you think that we should ever have undertaken so many and so great labors, unless we had persuaded ourselves that you would lend us assistance? 5. I asked him whether he would have come if I had sent him a letter. 6. I do not doubt that Caesar would have made peace with the Helvetii, if they had given him the hostages which he demanded of them. 7. I say that you will be safe, if you follow my advice. 8. I said that you would be safe, if you should follow my advice.

## LESSON XLI.

### THE INFINITIVE.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Infinitive without Subject Accusative, used as Subject.  
327. 1, 2 and *a*; A. & G. 452. N. 2, 455. *a*; H. 615, 612. 3.
2. Infinitive without Subject Accusative, used as Object.  
328. 1, 2; A. & G. 456; H. 607 and 1, 2, 608. 4, 612 and 1.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī, *it is sweet and noble to die for one's country.*
2. senātui placuit lēgātōs mittere, *the Senate decided (lit. it pleased the Senate) to send envoys.*
3. nōn semper licet ōtiōsum esse, *one cannot be always at leisure.*
4. patriciō tribūnō plēbis fierī nōn licēbat, *it was not allowed a patrician to become a tribune of the plebs.*
5. litterās mittere nōn audet, *he does not dare send the letter.*
6. nōnne mē audire vultis, *do you not wish to hear me?*
7. huic audāciae resistere dēbētis, *you ought to resist this audacity.*
8. colōniam dēdūcere cōnātus est, *he tried to lead out a colony.*
9. ēvādere nōn potuit, *he could not escape.*
10. parātus abire, *ready to depart.*
11. assuētus vidēre, *accustomed to see.*
12. beātus esse sine virtūte nēmō potest, *no one can be happy without virtue.*



## Remarks.

1. Note that where the English says 'ought to have done,' 'might have done,' the Latin uses *dēbui*, *oportuit*, *potui*, with the present infinitive, as, *dēbuit venīre*, *he ought to have come*; *potuit venīre*, *he might (could) have come*.

## VOCABULARY.

accept, <i>accipiō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>cēpī</i> , <i>ceptus</i> .	make ready, <i>parō</i> , 1. merit, <i>virtūs</i> , <i>ūtis</i> , f.
behold, <i>aspiciō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>spexī</i> , <i>spectus</i> .	measure out, <i>mētior</i> , <i>īrī</i> , <i>mēnsus</i> .
between, <i>inter</i> , prep. with acc.	pain, <i>dolor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.
confer, <i>colloquor</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>collocū-</i> <i>tus</i> .	permitted, it is permitted, <i>licet</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>licuit</i> , impersonal.
find (by search), <i>reperiō</i> , <i>īre</i> , <i>repperī</i> , <i>repertus</i> .	recount, <i>ēnumerō</i> , 1.
gather (trans.), <i>cōgō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>coēgī</i> , <i>coāctus</i> .	retreat, <i>recipiō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>cēpī</i> , <i>ceptus</i> , with the reflexive.
habit, <i>mōs</i> , <i>mōris</i> , m.	treat, treat of, <i>agō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>ēgī</i> , <i>āctus</i> .

## EXERCISE.

1. It is not our habit to accept terms of peace from an enemy. 2. It is necessary to hasten at once into Gaul and crush this uprising. 3. It was permitted to withdraw. 4. On account of the multitude of the enemy we decided to refrain from battle. 5. At what time did this bridge begin to be built? <sup>1</sup> 6. The Treveri having already gathered large forces were making ready to attack Labienus. 7. On this day it was necessary to measure out grain to the soldiers. 8. Most of the tribes neglected to send to the main-

land the hostages that they had promised. 9. I wish to confer with you concerning those matters which began to be treated of between us. 10. Caesar decided to fight, as soon as<sup>2</sup> he saw that the enemy wished to retreat. 11. It was not easy to prevent him from finding us. 12. I began to recount the merits of this general a little while ago. 13. Could you behold all this without the greatest pain? 14. You ought to have read this book. 15. You might have reminded<sup>3</sup> me of this before.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *be built*: use *fīō, fierī, factus*.
2. The order in Latin should be: *Caesar as soon as he, etc.*; B. 351, 2.
3. *might have reminded*: see Remark 1.

## LESSON XLII.

### THE INFINITIVE (*continued*).

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Infinitive with Subject Accusative, used as Subject. 330; A. & G. 455. 2; H. 615.
2. Infinitive with Subject Accusative, used as Object. 331 entire; A. & G. 459; H. 613. 1-3.
3. Passive Construction of Verbs which in the Active are followed by the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. 332 entire; H. 611. 1, 2 and Notes 1, 3.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *lēgem esse brevem oportet, the law ought to be brief.*
2. *turpe est mē mortem timuisse, it is disgraceful for me to have feared death.*
3. *militēs rēmigēsque revertī jussit, he ordered the soldiers and oarsmen to return.*
4. *cōsul lūdōs fierī vetuit, the consul forbade the games to be held.*
5. *nōn patiar istam suspiciōnem manēre, I will not allow that suspiciōn to remain.*
6. *sinite mē nostram calamitātem praeterīre, permit me to pass over our misfortune.*
7. *cūr hunc tantō dolōre affici vīs, why do you wish this man to be visited with so great grief?*
8. *vōs enim haec audire cupiō, for I wish you to hear this.*
9. *māluit sē diligī quam metui, he preferred to be loved rather than feared.*

10. nōn molestē ferēbant sē libīdinum vinculis laxātōs esse, *they did not regret (lit. bear it ill) that they had been freed from the fetters of passion.*

11. hīs frūmentum darī cōgēbat, *he compelled grain to be given to these.*

12. ire in exsilium jussus est, *he was ordered to go into exile.*

13. populī mājestās cōservārī jubētur, *the majesty of the people is ordered to be preserved.*

14. vidēbātur māgnam glōriam cōsecūtus,<sup>1</sup> *he seemed to have attained great glory.*

15. dīcitur in Italiam vēnisse, *he is said to have come into Italy.*

16. Aristīdēs jūstissimus fuisse trāditur, *Aristides is reported to have been very just.*

17. trāditum est Aristīdem jūstissimum fuisse, *it is reported that Aristides was very just.*

#### Notes on the Examples.

1) Observe that the participle in the compound tenses of the infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb in constructions of this type. The auxiliary *esse* is also freely omitted.

#### Remarks.

1. Note that verbs which have no participial stem express the future infinitive active and passive by *fore ut* or *futūrum esse ut*, with the subjunctive, as *spērō fore ut hostēs arceantur*, *I hope the enemy will be kept off*, lit. *I hope it will happen that the enemy will be kept off.*

#### VOCABULARY.

band, *manus, ūs*, f.

citizen, *cīvis, is*, c.

clear, is clear, *cōnstat, āre*,

*stitit*, impersonal.

discuss, *disputō*, 1.

fair, just, *aequus, a, um*.

forbid, *vetō, āre, uī, itus*.

formerly, *ōlim*.

hold regard, <b>habeō, ēre, uī,</b> <b>itus.</b> injure, <b>laedō, ere, laesī, lae-</b> <b>sus.</b> keep apart, <b>distineō, ēre, uī,</b> <b>tentus.</b> other side of, <b>ultrā,</b> prep. with acc.	present, <b>praesēns, entis.</b> report, announce, <b>nūntiō, 1.</b> reputation, <b>fāma, ae, f.</b> sacred, <b>sacer, sacra, sacrum.</b> unwilling, be unwilling, <b>nōlō,</b> <b>nōlle, nōlūi.</b>
--	---

EXERCISE.

1. It is not fair (for) the Germans to cross the Rhine and come into Gaul. 2. It was clear that Caesar would wage war in the territory of the Veneti. 3. It is of great importance<sup>1</sup> that the bands of the enemy be kept apart. 4. They reported to us that the ascent of this mountain was not difficult. 5. It is clear that this town could not be defended. 6. I am unwilling that these matters be discussed in your presence.<sup>2</sup> 7. He ordered Sabinus to lead out four cohorts. 8. He forbade the bridge to be torn down. 9. The Sequani will suffer the Helvetii to go through their territory. 10. The Belgians are said formerly to have dwelt the other side of the Rhine. 11. He did not wish his reputation to be injured. 12. This army seems to have been entirely wiped out. 13. Do we not wish the rights of Roman citizens to be held sacred among all nations?

Uprising of the Belgae.

Having defeated the Helvetii and the Germans, Caesar returned across<sup>3</sup> the Alps into Hither Gaul.

Here he passed the winter and held court.<sup>4</sup> At the beginning of the next spring he enrolled two new legions and set out for Gaul, where the Belgae were conspiring and exchanging hostages.<sup>5</sup> These had long seen that Caesar was gradually drawing near them, and believed that he would soon lead a Roman army against them. Accordingly, remembering their ancient valor, they decided to resist the Romans.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *is of great importance* : *māgnopere* interest.
2. *in your presence* : translate : *you being present*.
3. *across* : *per*.
4. *held court* : the Latin idiom for 'held court' is *conventūs* (acc. plu.) *agere*.
5. *exchanging hostages* : translate : *giving hostages between themselves*.

## LESSON XLIII.

### PARTICIPLES.

#### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. Tenses of the Participle. 336. 1-5; A. & G. 489 and 491; H. 640 and 1.
2. Use of Participles. 337. 1-3, 5, 8, a, b. 1), 2); A. & G. 494; 496, 497 and d; 500 and 1, 2, 4; H. 638, 1-3, 639, 613. 5.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. audiō tē loquentem, *I hear you as you speak.*
2. audivī tē loquentem, *I heard you as you were speaking.*
3. audiam tē loquentem, *I shall hear you as you speak, i.e. as you shall be speaking.*
4. locūtus tacet, *he has spoken and is silent, lit. having spoken he is silent.*
5. locūtus tacuit, *he had spoken and was silent.*
6. locūtus tacēbit, *he will speak and then keep silent.*
7. idōneum tempus ratus, Athēnās sē contulit, *thinking the time favorable, he betook himself to Athens.*
8. Platō scribēns est mortuus, *Plato died while writing.*
9. perfidiam veritus ad suōs recessit, *fearing treachery, he returned to his own troops.*
10. Catōnem vidī in bibliothēcā sedentem, *I saw Cato sitting in his library.*
11. Polyphēmum Homērus cum ariete colloquentem facit, *Homer represents Polyphemus talking with the ram.*

12. post rēgēs exāctōs, *after the expulsion of the kings, lit. after the kings expelled.*

13. lēgēs observandae, *laws deserving of observance.*

14. veniendum est, *it is necessary to come.*

15. huic mulierī parcendum est, *this woman must be spared.*

16. obliviscendum est injūriārum, *one must forget injuries.*

17. lēgem scribendam cūrāvit, *he saw to the engrossing of the law.*

18. eum jugulandum vōbīs trādidērunt, *they handed him over to you to be put to death.*

#### Remarks.

1. Note that the perfect passive participle is often equivalent to a co-ordinate clause in English, as, *C. Servilius Ahāla Sp. Maelium occupātum interēmit, Gaius Servilius Ahala surprised and slew Spurius Maelius, lit. slew him having been surprised.*

2. Observe that the present active participle is used much less freely in Latin than in English. We employ it somewhat loosely to denote an act prior to that of the verb with which it is connected; as, 'Finding no means of escape, he surrendered.' Here the *finding* is anterior to the *surrender*. In such cases the Latin would employ some other form of expression; in that language the present participle is usually strictly limited to the expression of acts *contemporary with the action of the main verb.*

#### VOCABULARY.

advance, prōgredior, ī, gres-	old, vetus, veteris.
sus.	overthrow, ēvertō, ere, vertī,
civil, cīvīlis, e.	versus.
found, condō, ere, didī,	provide, provide for, cūrō, 1.
dītus.	pupil, discipulus, ī, m.
hand over, trādō, ere, didī,	ravage, populor, 1.
dītus.	rejoice, gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus.
offer, dō, dare, dedī, datus.	



republic, <b>rēs pūblica, reī</b>	strong, <b>validus, a, um.</b>
<b>pūblicaē, f.</b>	think, <b>arbitror, 1.</b>
seven hundredth, <b>septingen-</b>	thither, <b>eō.</b>
<b>tēsimum, a, um.</b>	urge, <b>hortor, 1.</b>

## EXERCISE.

1. Rejoicing that this opportunity was offered to him,<sup>1</sup> he ordered his soldiers to advance. 2. I heard you urging your pupils to read Caesar's commentaries on the civil war. 3. In the seven hundred and eighth year after the founding of the city the old republic was overthrown. 4. We must withdraw<sup>2</sup> from these woods to our camp. 5. We must use<sup>3</sup> these vessels. 6. Having ravaged these districts, they returned to camp. 7. Thinking that this war could be quickly finished, Caesar led his army thither. 8. The legions were held almost surrounded by the enemy. 9. Our men attacked the rest as they attempted to cross this river. 10. I provided for defending the city by many strong<sup>4</sup> guards. 11. I handed these prisoners over to you to be led back to camp.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. Use the reflexive.
2. *we must withdraw*: translate: *it must be withdrawn by us.*
3. *we must use*: translate: *it must be used by us.*
4. *many strong*: translate: *many and strong*; B. 241, 3.

## LESSON XLIV.

THE GERUND; THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION; THE SUPINE.

### GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES.

1. **The Gerund.** 338. 1-5; A. & G. 502; 504 and *b*; 505 and *a*; 506 and N. 2; 507; H. 624, 626, 627, 628 and footnote 2, 629.
2. **The Gerundive Construction.** 339. 1-5; A. & G. 503; 504 and *b*, 505, 506, 507; H. 621, 623 and 1, 628.
3. **The Supine.** 340 entire; A. & G. 509, 510 and N. 2; H. 632 and 1, 633, 635 and 1, 2, 4.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *fīnem sequendī fēcit, he made an end of following.*
2. *cupidus tē audiendī, desirous of hearing you.*
3. *glōriandī causā, for the sake of boasting.*
4. *spatium sūmāmus ad cōgitandum, let us take time for reflection.*
5. *frātre tuum laudandō, by praising your brother.*
6. *ex discendō capiunt voluptātem, they derive pleasure from learning.*
7. *cōsiliū urbis dēlendae et cīvium trucīdandōrum, the plan of destroying the city and massacring the citizens.*
8. *sēnsūs ad rēs percipiendās idōneī, senses adapted to perceiving objects.*
9. *Brūtus in liberandā patriā interfectus est, Brutus was slain in freeing his country.*

10. cupiditās plūra<sup>1</sup> habendī, *desire of having more.*

11. ad agrum fruendum<sup>2</sup> nōs allectat senectūs, *old age invites us to enjoy the farm.*

12. suī cōservandī<sup>3</sup> causā, *for the sake of saving themselves.*

13. vestri cōservandī<sup>3</sup> causā, *for the sake of saving yourselves.*

14. pācem petitum ōrātōrēs mittunt, *they send envoys to ask for peace.*

15. mirābile audītū, *wonderful to hear!*

#### Notes on the Examples.

1) The Gerundive Construction could not be used here; plūrium habendōrum could be masculine as well as neuter, and would thus occasion ambiguity.

2) Note that fruor, like the other deponents governing the ablative, admits the gerundive construction.

3) Cōservandī agrees merely in form with suī and vestri; in sense it is plural.

#### Remarks.

1. The dative of the gerund and of the gerundive are both rare in Ciceronian Latin; consequently the construction, though common later, is hardly to be imitated by the beginner in Latin writing.

#### VOCABULARY.

accomplish, cōficiō, ere,	endure, perferō, ferre, tulī,
fēcī, fectus.	lātus.
against, in, prep. with acc.	for (denoting purpose), ad,
ambush, insidiae, ārum, f.	prep. with acc.
arm, armō, l.	gain possession of, potior, irī,
collect, colligō, ere, lēgī,	ītus.
lēctus.	hurl, coniciō, ere, conjēcī,
draw on, lure on, trahō, ere,	jectus.
trāxī, trāctus.	ready, prōmptus, a, um.

renew, **renovō**, 1.

spend, **dēgō**, **ere**, **dēgī**.

sufficient, **satis**.

temper, **animus**, **ī**, m.

winter, spend the winter,

**hiemō**, 1.

### EXERCISE.

1. These tribes formed the plan of renewing the war and crushing the Roman legion. 2. All hope of gaining possession of this town at once departed. 3. We stationed our troops in this village for the sake of wintering (here). 4. No opportunity was offered for hurling javelins<sup>1</sup> against the enemy. 5. I believe that one year will be sufficient for accomplishing these things. 6. The temper of the Gauls is ready for undertaking wars, but it is weak for enduring misfortunes. 7. Wonderful to tell, no one was in charge of these troops. 8. Very little time was given the Romans for arming themselves. 9. We spent three days at Geneva in writing letters. 10. By their eagerness for pursuing they were drawn on to the place of ambush. 11. They gave the enemy no opportunity of collecting themselves.

#### The Fight with the Nervii.

As the Romans were pitching camp on the summit of a hill near the left bank of the Sabis<sup>2</sup> river, the Nervii and their allies suddenly crossed the stream and advanced up hill<sup>3</sup> towards the Roman camp. So sudden was the onset that time was not given the Romans for arming themselves. They fought where

they stood,<sup>4</sup> without line of battle, without leaders, without plan. But such was their courage and discipline in consequence of former battles, that they finally defeated the Nervii and reduced their tribe almost<sup>5</sup> to extinction.<sup>6</sup>

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *for hurling javelins*: use the genitive of the gerund.
2. *Sabis*: **Sabis**, is.
3. *up hill*: **adversō colle**; literally, *the hill being against (them)*.
4. *stood*: use the pluperfect of **consistō**, — **cōnstiterant**; literally, *had taken their stand*.
5. *Almost*: **prope**.
6. *extinction*: **interneciō, ōnis**.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

IN

### CONTINUED DISCOURSE.

15.\*

#### Galba at Octodurus.

Servius Galba was a brave lieutenant, who had been ordered by Caesar to conduct<sup>1</sup> one legion and eight hundred horsemen into (the territory of) the Veragri. Galba had stationed his cohorts in a village, which is called Octodurus, and was fortifying a camp, when suddenly the Gauls made an attack upon<sup>2</sup> the Romans. After these<sup>3</sup> had resisted bravely (for) many hours, they finally made a sortie,<sup>4</sup> and put the Gauls to flight.<sup>5</sup>

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *conduct*: dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
2. *upon*: in, with acc.
3. *after these had resisted, they made*; translate: *these, after they resisted, made, etc.*
4. *sortie*: ēruptiō, ōnis.
5. *put to flight*: in fugam coniciō, ere, conjēci, conjectus.

---

\* Fourteen passages of continuous discourse have been interspersed among the preceding lessons.

16.

Crassus's Expedition against the Maritime Tribes.

A few months after<sup>1</sup> the Belgians had been brought under the Roman power, Publius Crassus was sent with an army into the maritime<sup>2</sup> states lying<sup>3</sup> between the Loire<sup>4</sup> and the Seine.<sup>5</sup> Here dwelt the Veneti and many other tribes, all (of) which were especially skilled<sup>6</sup> in seamanship. Crassus persuaded these to submit<sup>7</sup> to the Romans and to give him<sup>8</sup> hostages. But they soon repented<sup>9</sup> of this act, and when in the following<sup>10</sup> winter Roman officers<sup>11</sup> came into these districts to levy<sup>12</sup> grain, they were arrested<sup>13</sup> and held<sup>14</sup> by the Veneti.

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *a few months after*: translate: *by a few months after* (postquam).

2. *maritime*: *maritimus, a, um*.

3. *lying*: use *positus, a, um*; literally, *placed*.

4. *Loire*: *Liger, is*; acc. *Ligerim*.

5. *Seine*: *Sēquana, ae*.

6. *especially skilled in*: use superlative of *peritus, a, um*; governs gen.

7. *submit*: use *sē dēdere* (*dēdō, ere, dēdidī, itus*).

8. *him*: reflexive.

9. *they repented of this act*: translate: *it repented them of this act*. Compare Lesson XIV, Examples 11, 12.

10. *following*: *proximus, a, um*.

11. *officers*: use *praefectus, i*.

12. *levy*: *imperō, 1*.

13. *arrested*: use *comprehendō, ere, endī, ēnsus*.

14. *held*: use *retineō, ēre, uī, tentus*.

## 17.

## War Breaks out with the Veneti.

The neighboring tribes quickly followed the example<sup>1</sup> of the Veneti. Thus<sup>2</sup> a new war broke out.<sup>3</sup> Caesar himself had set out for Illyricum, when he was informed through messengers of these occurrences.<sup>4</sup> Since he knew that the Gauls would not wage war before the next spring, he remained in his province the entire winter. Meanwhile,<sup>5</sup> fearing<sup>6</sup> that the Belgæ might lend aid to the maritime Gauls, he sent Labienus with all the cavalry to the Rhine.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *example* : *exemplum*, *i*.
2. *thus* : *ita*.
3. *break out* : use *coorior*, *irī*, *ortus*.
4. *occurrences* : use *rēs*.
5. *meanwhile* : *interea*.
6. *fearing* : use *vereor*. For the tense, see Lesson XLIII, Example 7.

## 18.

## Caesar's Preparations for the Contest.

Since Caesar understood that the Veneti would fight with ships, he ordered a large Roman fleet to be made ready and rowers and pilots<sup>1</sup> to be collected from the province. Having first assembled<sup>2</sup> his land<sup>3</sup> forces at the beginning of the summer, he began to attack the towns of the Veneti and captured very many. But whenever<sup>4</sup> a town was captured, the enemy escaped by



means of their ships and betook themselves to another place.

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *pilots*: use gubernātor, ōris.
2. *assembled*: use cōgō, ere, cōgī, cōāctus.
3. *land*: use pedester, tris, e.
4. *whenever*: see 288. 3; A. & G. 548; H. 601. 4.

19.

End of the Struggle.

Accordingly Caesar decided to wait for<sup>1</sup> the Roman fleet, which had long been detained by violent<sup>2</sup> storms. When this arrived, the Romans and Veneti engaged in a naval battle,<sup>3</sup> which lasted<sup>4</sup> from the fourth<sup>5</sup> hour until sunset.<sup>6</sup> Although the Veneti were superior<sup>7</sup> in number of vessels, the Romans finally conquered.<sup>8</sup> For Brutus, who was in charge of the fleet, had equipped<sup>9</sup> his (men) with sharp<sup>10</sup> hooks<sup>11</sup> fastened<sup>12</sup> to long poles,<sup>13</sup> by means of which they cut<sup>14</sup> the rigging<sup>15</sup> of the ships of the enemy.

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *wait for*: expectō, 1 (transitive).
2. *violent*: translate: *very great*.
3. *engaged in a battle*: use pūnam committere (committō, ere, mīsi, missus).
4. *which lasted*: begin a new sentence, and translate: *it was fought* (impers.).
5. *fourth*: quārtus, a, um.
6. *sunset*: occāsus sōlis (occāsus, ūs).

7. *were superior* : use *superō*, 1.
8. *conquered* : use *vincō*, *ere*, *vici*, *victus*.
9. *equipped* : use *instruō*, *ere*, *struxi*, *structus*.
10. *sharp* : *acutus*, *a*, *um*.
11. *hooks* : *falx*, *falcis*, *f*.
12. *fastened* : use *affigō*, *ere*, *fixi*, *fixus*.
13. *long poles* : use *longurius*, *i*, *m*.
14. *cut* : use *abscidō*, *ere*, *cidi*, *scisus*.
15. *rigging* : *rudentēs*, *um*, *m*.

## 20.

## The Germans Invade Gaul.

Although after three years Caesar had subdued<sup>1</sup> all the Gallic tribes which resisted Roman authority,<sup>2</sup> yet the Germans were unwilling to remain in their own territory, and often crossed the Rhine into Gaul. In the consulship of Pompey and Crassus a large multitude of *Usipetes*<sup>3</sup> and *Tencteri*<sup>4</sup> had emigrated from home and come into the territory of the Belgae. Thinking it would be dangerous,<sup>5</sup> if he should allow<sup>6</sup> these to remain, Caesar decided to bring war upon them.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *subdued* : use *domō*, *āre*, *ui*, *itus*.
2. *authority* : *auctoritās*, *ātis*, *f*.
3. *Usipetes* : *Usipetēs*, *um*.
4. *Tencteri* : *Tencteri*, *ōrum*.
5. *dangerous* : *periculōsus*, *a*, *um*.
6. *allow* : *sinō*, *ere*, *sivi*, *situs*.

21.

Massacre of the Germans.

The ambassadors of the Germans had asked Caesar to assign<sup>1</sup> them lands or to suffer them, with the sanction<sup>2</sup> of the Roman people, to hold those which they had already seized in the territory of the Menapii. While the ambassadors were discussing<sup>3</sup> these matters with Caesar at<sup>4</sup> a conference, they were suddenly arrested. Caesar then marched out with all his forces and attacked the camp of the Germans, before they knew what had happened. Many thousands perished,<sup>5</sup> and the rest returned into Germany.

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *assign*: tribuō, ere, uī, ūtus.
2. *sanction*: voluntās, ātis.
3. *were discussing*: agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.
4. *at*: translate: *in*.
5. *perished*: pereō, ire, ii, itūrus.

22.

Condemnation of Caesar's Act.

There were some<sup>1</sup> at Rome who blamed this act of Caesar. He himself says in his *Commentaries* that the Germans were merely<sup>2</sup> seeking a delay,<sup>3</sup> until the cavalry which they had sent across the Meuse<sup>4</sup> should return. Whether this suspicion was well-grounded<sup>5</sup> or not, we do not know. Most (persons) believe that

Caesar was cruel and treacherous. In the Roman Senate Cato even moved<sup>6</sup> that Caesar be given up<sup>7</sup> to the Germans, that they might take vengeance on him.

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *some* : nōnnūllī, æ, a.
2. *merely* : tantum.
3. *delay* : mora, æ.
4. *Meuse* : Mosa, æ.
5. *well-grounded* : jūstus, a, um.
6. *moved* : cēnseō, ēre, uī, cēnsus.
7. *given up* : trādō, ere, didī, ditus.

23.

**Caesar Crosses the Rhine.**

The Ubii, who had been made tributaries<sup>1</sup> by the Suebi, a powerful German tribe, had already long before,<sup>2</sup> through their envoys, entreated<sup>3</sup> Caesar to free them from the domination<sup>4</sup> of the Suebi. Besides this<sup>5</sup> the Usipetes and Tencteri had found safety and abodes among the Sugambri, another German tribe. For<sup>6</sup> these reasons Caesar decided to cross the Rhine, and build a bridge of piles,<sup>7</sup> by which to lead<sup>8</sup> his troops across. But the Sugambri, as soon as they heard that Caesar was drawing near them, abandoned<sup>9</sup> their villages and betook themselves into the forests.

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *tributaries* : vectīgālēs, ium.
2. *long before* : before by much.

3. *entreated* : **obsecrō**, 1.
4. *domination* : **dominātiō**, **ōnis**.
5. *besides this the Usipetes had found* : translate : *it was added that the Usipetes had found*. See Lesson XXXIV, Example 11.
6. *for* : **propter**, prep. with acc.
7. *of piles* : use the ablative ; *pile* in Latin is **sublica**, **ae**.
8. *by which to lead across* : use a Relative Clause of Purpose.
9. *abandoned* : **dēserō**, **ere**, **uī**, **sertus**.

24.

Caesar's Second Invasion of Britain.

In the consulship of Pompey and Crassus<sup>1</sup> Caesar first landed<sup>2</sup> an army in Britain. A year later<sup>3</sup> he set out a second time<sup>4</sup> for this island with five legions and a large number of cavalry. When he had disembarked<sup>5</sup> his army and chosen a place suitable for a camp, he inquired from certain captives<sup>6</sup> where the enemy were, and was informed that, terrified by the multitude of Roman ships which they had seen, they had withdrawn far from the coast.<sup>7</sup>

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *in the consulship of Pompey and Crassus* : express by the Ablative Absolute.
2. *landed* : **expōnō**, **ere**, **posuī**, **positus**.
3. *a year later* : translate : *afterwards by a year*.
4. *a second time* : **iterum**.
5. *disembarked* : use **expōnō**, as above.
6. *captives* : **captivus**, **ī**, **m**.
7. *coast* : **lītus**, **orīs**.

## 25.

## The Britons.

Caesar tells (us) that at this time there were many large and very powerful tribes in Britain; that of these the most civilized<sup>1</sup> were those which inhabited Kent,<sup>2</sup> a region on the sea<sup>3</sup>; that as money<sup>4</sup> they did not use gold and silver,<sup>5</sup> but copper and iron<sup>6</sup>; that timber<sup>7</sup> of almost every kind grew<sup>8</sup> there, except<sup>9</sup> beech and fir<sup>10</sup>; that the Britons had hares, geese, and hens,<sup>11</sup> but thought it impious<sup>12</sup> to eat<sup>13</sup> these.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *civilized* : hūmānus, a, um.
2. *Kent* : Cantium, ī.
3. *on the sea* : maritimus, a, um.
4. *as money* : prō nummō : literally, *for money*.
5. *gold, silver* : aurum, ī; argentum, ī.
6. *copper, iron* : aes, aeris; ferrum, ī.
7. *timber* : māteria, ae.
8. *grew* : nāscor, ī, nātus.
9. *except* : praeter; prep. with acc.
10. *beech, fir* : fāgus, ī; abīēs, etis.
11. *hares, geese, hens* : lepus, oris, m.; ānser, eris, m.; gallīna, ae, f.
12. *impious* : nefās, indecl.
13. *eat* : edō, ere, ēdī, ēsus.

## 26.

## A Battle with the Britons.

On the following<sup>1</sup> day our cavalry fought with the horsemen and charioteers<sup>2</sup> of the enemy, and drove<sup>3</sup>

them from the plain across a small stream into the woods; but following too eagerly, our men lost more than twenty<sup>4</sup> of their own number.<sup>5</sup> They then returned across the stream and were fortifying a camp, when suddenly the Britons rushed forth<sup>6</sup> from the woods and made an attack upon<sup>7</sup> our men engaged<sup>8</sup> in the work.

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *following*: use *posterus*, *a*, *um*, here.
2. *charioteers*: *essedārius*, *i*.
3. *drove*: *repellō*, *ere*, *reppulī*, *pulsus*.
4. *more than twenty*: see 217. 3; A. & G. 407. *c*; H. 471. 4.
5. *of their own number*: see Lesson XXIII, Remark 1.
6. *rushed forth*: *sē ēiciō* (*ēiciō*, *ere*, *ējēcī*, *ējectus*).
7. *upon*: *in*, with *acc*.
8. *engaged*: *versātus*, *a*, *um*.

27.

Caesar Prepares to Return to Gaul.

Finally the Britons sent envoys to Caesar with reference to<sup>1</sup> submission.<sup>2</sup> They promised they would give the hostages which he demanded, and furnish him grain and all things which he should need.<sup>3</sup> Caesar, since he wished to pass the winter on the continent,<sup>4</sup> in order to see to it<sup>5</sup> that the Gauls made no<sup>6</sup> uprising,<sup>7</sup> received the hostages and led his army back to the sea. Here he found the ships, which had been shattered<sup>8</sup> by a storm, already repaired.<sup>9</sup>

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *with reference to* : *dē*.
2. *submission* : *dēditīō, ōnis, f.*
3. *which he should need* : see Lesson XVI, Example 11.
4. *continent* : *continēns, entis, f.*; *abl. continentī.*
5. *see to it* : *videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus.*
6. *that the Gauls made no* : translate: *that the Gauls should not make any.*
7. *uprising* : *mōtus, ūs, m.*
8. *shattered* : *affligō, ere, flīxī, flīctus.*
9. *repaired* : *reficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.*

## 28.

## Caesar's Second Expedition into Germany.

In the following<sup>1</sup> year Caesar led his army a second time<sup>2</sup> into Germany, because the Suebi had sent help to the Treveri. He crossed the Rhine by a bridge a little above<sup>3</sup> that place where he had led his army across two years before. When he inquired of the Ubii where the Suebi were, he was informed that, as soon as they had learned of<sup>4</sup> Caesar's approach, they had betaken themselves into the midst of a forest of boundless<sup>5</sup> extent,<sup>6</sup> which is called Bacēnis.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *following* : *posterus, a, um.*
2. *a second time* : *iterum.*
3. *above* : *suprā, prep. with acc.*
4. *of* : *dē.*
5. *boundless* : *infinitus, a, um.*
6. *extent* : *māgnitūdō, inis, f.*



29.

Institutions of the Gauls—The Druids.

Caesar tells (us) that in all Gaul those who were of any account<sup>1</sup> and honor were either Druids<sup>2</sup> or Knights; that the Druids attended to<sup>3</sup> the sacrifices<sup>4</sup> both public<sup>5</sup> and private and the other religious<sup>6</sup> observances; that they also decided<sup>7</sup> controversies, and determined<sup>8</sup> rewards<sup>9</sup> and punishments; that at the head<sup>10</sup> of all the Druids was one, who was regarded as the chief; that at a fixed time of year they all assembled in a consecrated place in the territory of the Carnutes.<sup>11</sup>

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *account*: numerus, ī, m.; *of account*: express by the Ablative of Quality.
2. *Druids*: Druidēs, um.
3. *attended to*: prōcūrō, 1 (transitive).
4. *sacrifices*: sacrificium, ī, n.
5. *public, private*: pūblicus, a, um; prīvātus, a, um.
6. *religious observances*: use religiō, ōnis, f.
7. *decided*: dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus.
8. *determined*: cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus.
9. *rewards, punishments*: praemium, ī; poena, ae.
10. *was at the head*: praesum, esse, fui.
11. *Carnutes*: Carnutēs, um.

30.

The Druids (*continued*).

(Caesar tells us) That hither<sup>1</sup> came all who had controversies and submitted to<sup>2</sup> the decisions of the Druids; that the Druids themselves enjoyed exemp-

tion<sup>3</sup> from military service<sup>4</sup> and all other burdens,<sup>5</sup> which the people bore; that the system<sup>6</sup> originated<sup>7</sup> in Britain and was transferred<sup>8</sup> from there<sup>9</sup> to Gaul; and that those who wished to understand it better were wont<sup>10</sup> to go thither for the sake of learning (it).

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *hither*: hūc.
2. *submitted to*: pāreō, ēre, uī, itūrus; governs the dative.
3. *exemption*: immūnitās, ātis, f.
4. *from military service*: use the genitive of mīlitia, ae.
5. *burden*: onus, eris, n.
6. *system*: disciplina, ae, f.
7. *originated*: orior, irī, ortus.
8. *was transferred*: trānsferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
9. *from there*: illinc.
10. *were wont*: soleō, ēre, solitus.

### 31.

#### The Gauls Plan an Uprising.

A short time after<sup>1</sup> Caesar had set out for Italy, frequent<sup>2</sup> rumors<sup>3</sup> were brought to the Gauls that great dissensions had broken out<sup>4</sup> at Rome and that Caesar, detained on that account,<sup>5</sup> was not able to return to his army. Induced<sup>6</sup> by this opportunity,<sup>7</sup> they began to adopt plans for waging war<sup>8</sup>; nor did they doubt that they would be able to cut Caesar off from the army, if he should return into Gaul, since the legions did not dare<sup>9</sup> to march out from winter quarters without their commander.<sup>10</sup>

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. See p. 145, Exercise 16, Suggestion 1.
2. *frequent*: *crēber, bra, brum.*
3. *rumors*: *rūmor, ōris, m.*
4. *break out*: *coorior, iri, coortus.*
5. *on that account*: *proptereā.*
6. *induced*: *impellō, ere, puli, pulsus.*
7. *opportunity*: here use *occāsiō, ōnis, f.*
8. *for waging war*: use the genitive of the gerundive construction.
9. *dare*: *audeō, ēre, ausus.*
10. *commander*: *imperātor, ōris, m.*

## 32.

## Vercingetorix.

The leader of this uprising<sup>1</sup> was Vercingetorix, an Arvernian,<sup>2</sup> a young man of the greatest ability and daring,<sup>3</sup> whose father for many years had held the leadership<sup>4</sup> of all Gaul and had finally been killed on the ground that<sup>5</sup> he sought regal power. When his plans became known,<sup>6</sup> the chieftains of the Arverni, who did not believe that the Roman power could be crushed at this time, endeavored to restrain him,<sup>7</sup> but Vercingetorix, having collected a large band, urged his (countrymen) to take arms for the sake of their common freedom.<sup>8</sup>

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *uprising*: *mōtus, ūs, m.*
2. *Arvernian*: *Arvernus, i.*
3. *ability, daring*: *virtūs, ūtis, f.*; *audācia, ae, f.*
4. *leadership*: *prīncipātus, ūs, m.*

5. *on the ground that* : *quod* ; 286 ; A. & G. 540. 2 ; H. 588. II.

6. *when his plans became known* : translate : *his plans having become known*. As verb use *cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus*.

7. *endeavored to restrain* : express by the Conative Imperfect of *coërceō, ēre, uī, itus*.

8. *freedom* : *libertās, ātis, f.*

## 33.

**Caesar Returns to Gaul.**

Meanwhile the Roman commander-in-chief suddenly returned to Gaul in the depth of winter.<sup>1</sup> He quickly made ready those things which he regarded necessary for defending the province, and sent also a large force<sup>2</sup> across the Cevennes<sup>3</sup> Mountain(s) into the territory of the Arverni. But he did not dare to remain here, fearing that he might be cut off from his army. Accordingly he came first to Vienne,<sup>4</sup> and from there,<sup>5</sup> attended only by a few horsemen, he returned through the Haedui to his own troops.

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *depth of winter* : translate : *middle of winter*.

2. *force* : use the plural, *cōplae*.

3. *Cevennes* : *Cevenna, ae*.

4. *Vienne* : *Vienna, ae*.

5. *from there* : *inde*.

## 34.

**Vercingetorix is Accused of Treason.**

While these<sup>1</sup> (events) were in progress,<sup>2</sup> Vercingetorix was accused of treason by his (countrymen),

because a few days previously he had moved his camp nearer the Romans; because he had himself departed with the larger part of the Gallic horsemen; because he had put no one in charge of the infantry<sup>3</sup> forces which he had left behind.<sup>4</sup> His enemies said that all these (things) could not have happened<sup>5</sup> without design,<sup>6</sup> and that he seemed to be seeking the regal power through Caesar's favor.<sup>7</sup>

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *these* : use the neuter.
2. *were in progress* : use the passive of *agō, ere, ēgī, āctus*. For the mood and tense, see 293. I; A. & G. 556; H. 604. 1.
3. *infantry* : use *pedester, tris, tre*.
4. *had left behind* : *relinquō, ere, liqui, lictus*.
5. *could not have happened* : translate: *were not able to happen*; Lesson XLI, Remark 1.
6. *design* : *cōnsilium, ī, n*.
7. *favor* : in this sense, *grātia, æ, f*.

35.

Vercingetorix's Defence.

“As to the fact that<sup>1</sup> I moved the camp, I did this in order that we might find more fodder<sup>2</sup>; as to my approaching<sup>3</sup> nearer the Romans, I simply<sup>4</sup> chose a place, which we could defend more easily; as to my withdrawing<sup>5</sup> the cavalry, I wished to use it. I did not hand over to any one the forces which I left, lest he should be forced<sup>6</sup> by the multitude to fight, against my will.<sup>7</sup>” When he had said these and similar

(things), the whole multitude shouted<sup>8</sup> that they no longer<sup>9</sup> doubted concerning his loyalty.<sup>10</sup>

**Suggestions on the Exercise.**

1. *as to the fact that*: **quod**, with indicative.
2. *fodder*: **pābulum**, **i**. For the proper case here, see Lesson XII, Example 7.
3. *as to my approaching*: translate: *as to the fact that I approached*. Use **appropinquō**, **1**.
4. *simply*: **tantum**.
5. *as to my withdrawing*: see Suggestion 3. For *withdraw* (transitive), use **dēducō**, **ere**, **dūxi**, **ductus**.
6. *be forced*: **cōgō**, **ere**, **coēgi**, **coāctus**.
7. *against my will*: translate: *I being unwilling*.
8. *shouted*: **conclāmō**, **1**.
9. *no longer*: **jam nōn**.
10. *loyalty*: **fidēs**, **eī**, **f**.

**36.**

**Final Revolt of the Gauls.**

Finally all the Gauls from the Pyrenees<sup>1</sup> to the Rhine, except the Remi<sup>2</sup> and a few other states, revolted,<sup>3</sup> hoping that they could drive the Romans out of Gaul and regain<sup>4</sup> their former freedom. The Haedui demanded that a leader chosen from their state should be placed in charge of the war, but the rest desired<sup>5</sup> Vercingetorix, who, having been appointed commander-in-chief, betook himself to Alesia, a town well fortified<sup>6</sup> and stocked<sup>7</sup> with food and other supplies.<sup>8</sup>

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *Pyrenees*: Pŷrēnaei montēs.
2. *Remi*: Rēmī, ōrum.
3. *revolted*: dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum.
4. *regain*: recuperō, 1.
5. *desired*: cupiō, ere, cupīvī, itus.
6. *well fortified*: use the superlative of mūnītus, a, um.
7. *stocked*: refertus, a, um.
8. *supplies*: opēs, um.

37.

The Gauls Make Sorties from Alesia.

The eighty thousand Gauls shut up<sup>1</sup> with Vercingetorix in Alesia soon lacked food.<sup>2</sup> They determined therefore<sup>3</sup> to try<sup>4</sup> whether<sup>5</sup> they could break through<sup>6</sup> the circumvallation<sup>7</sup> of the Romans. Their first assault was repulsed,<sup>8</sup> but on the following<sup>9</sup> day they filled (up) the trenches of the enemy and drove the defenders from the rampart.<sup>10</sup> Then Labienus, sent thither by Caesar, collected the nearest cohorts and with four legions attacked the enemy.

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *shut up*: inclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus.
2. *lacked food*: translate: *food was lacking to*. Use dēsum, deesse, dēfui.
3. *therefore*: igitur, post-positive.
4. *to try*: cōnor, 1.
5. *whether*: use sī; 300. 3; A. & G. 576. a; H. 649. II. 3.
6. *break through*: perrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus.
7. *circumvallation*: vāllum, ī.

8. *repulsed*: repellō, ere, reppulī, pulsus.
9. *following*: posterus, a, um.
10. *rampart*: agger, eris, m.

## 38.

## Failure of the Gallic Cause.

Before the eyes of Caesar himself, who came into view<sup>1</sup> at this crisis,<sup>2</sup> the Gauls were driven back, and the squadrons<sup>3</sup> of Roman cavalry that had come with Caesar, attacking their rear as they fled,<sup>4</sup> cut them to pieces. On the following day Vercingetorix, having called a council, declared that they must yield<sup>5</sup> to fortune and that he himself was prepared<sup>6</sup> to give himself up<sup>7</sup> to the Roman commander-in-chief. Mounted on his horse<sup>8</sup> he advanced to the tribunal<sup>9</sup> of Caesar, surrendered himself and his weapons, and sat down<sup>10</sup> in silence<sup>11</sup> on the steps<sup>12</sup> at<sup>13</sup> Caesar's feet.

## Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *view*: cōspectus, ūs.
2. *crisis*: discrīmen, inis, n.
3. *squadrons*: turma, ae.
4. *their rear as they fled*: translate: *the rear of (them) fleeing*.
5. *they must yield*: translate: *it must be yielded*; impersonal use of the passive periphrastic conjugation.
6. *prepared*: parātus, a, um.
7. *give himself up*: sē dēdere.
8. *mounted on his horse*: equō vectus; literally, *borne by his horse*.
9. *tribunal*: tribūnal, ālis, n.
10. *sat down*: cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sessum.



11. *in silence*: tacitus.
12. *steps*: gradus, ūs.
13. *at*: ad.

39.

Beginning of Strife between Pompey and Caesar.

When Caesar had brought all Gaul under the power of the Romans, he placed Titus Labienus in charge of these districts and himself set out for Italy. There he was informed that his enemies were urging that he be deprived of a part of his army. Caesar promised that he would disband<sup>1</sup> a part of his troops, if Pompey would do the same, and released<sup>2</sup> two legions. These he supposed<sup>3</sup> would, according<sup>4</sup> to the resolution<sup>5</sup> of the Senate, be sent to the Parthian<sup>6</sup> war, but he later found out that they had been handed over to Pompey.

Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *disband*: dīmittō, ere, mīsi, missus.
2. *released*: remittō, ere, mīsi, missus.
3. *supposed*: crēdō, ere, crēdidi, itus.
4. *according to*: ex.
5. *resolution*: cōsultum, ī, n.
6. *Parthian*: Parthicus, a, um.

40.

The Character of Caesar.

It is difficult to form a correct judgment<sup>1</sup> concerning Caesar's character.<sup>2</sup> It is admitted<sup>3</sup> that in early

life<sup>4</sup> he was dissolute,<sup>5</sup> and that afterwards he showed no regard<sup>6</sup> for justice and the laws. Yet he was (a man) of exceptional<sup>7</sup> foresight,<sup>8</sup> and saw not only from what evils the state was suffering<sup>9</sup> but also by what means<sup>10</sup> these could be checked.<sup>11</sup> Yet on account of his premature<sup>12</sup> death we cannot say how successfully<sup>13</sup> he would have organized<sup>14</sup> the government,<sup>15</sup> if he had lived.

#### Suggestions on the Exercise.

1. *form a correct judgment* : *rēctē jūdicāre*.
2. *character* : *ingenium*.
3. *it is admitted* : *cōnstat*.
4. *in early life* : express by *adulēscēns* in agreement with the subject of the dependent infinitive.
5. *dissolute* : *libidinōsus*, a, um.
6. *showed no regard* : 'to show no regard' is in Latin *nōn ratiōnem habēre*, construed with a gen. of the thing.
7. *exceptional* : *singulāris*, e.
8. *foresight* : *prūdentia*, ae.
9. *was suffering from* : *labōrō*, 1; with abl.
10. *means* : *ratiō*, ōnis.
11. *be checked* : *contineō*, ēre, uī, tentus.
12. *premature* : *praemātūrus*, a, um.
13. *successfully* : *fēliciter*.
14. *would have organized* : *cōnstituō*, ere, uī, ūtus; for the mood and tense, see 322. b.
15. *government* : *rēs pūblica*.

SPECIMENS OF LATIN COMPOSITION  
ENTRANCE PAPERS SET BY REPRESENTATIVE INSTITUTIONS.

The sea was so full of pirates that no Roman sailed there in safety. Traders were afraid that their fortunes would not be safe. Even armies crossed in the dead of winter to escape the pirates; for they knew that a fleet which had a consul for commander had been sunk at Ostia. When men asked who was defending the provinces, the answer was that no one was defending them, that perhaps the city of Rome itself would be taken. — Based on CICERO: *Manilian Law*, 31–33. — *Harvard*, 1904 (*Advanced*).

Since you have now captured the wicked leaders of this dangerous and nefarious conspiracy you may (*debere*) consider all the hopes, all the sources of Catiline to be ruined (*concidere*). For I drove him from the city because I knew that he alone was to be feared, but only as long as he was within the walls of the city. He, indeed, knew everything; he selected apt men and persuaded them to perform the most shameful deeds. When he had conceived (*capere*) a plan, his tongue and his hands were always ready to accomplish it. When, therefore, I drove him from the city into the camp I relieved you from the greatest burden and anxiety, so that you might live in peace.

For if Catiline had remained in the city we should always have to fight against him. But since he is gone, there is no reason why we should fear either Lentulus or Cassius or Cethegus. — *Yale*, 1903.

1. Was it not because the Haedui could not defend themselves that they sent envoys to Caesar to ask his aid?

2. When everything had been prepared for departure, there came storms which kept our soldiers in camp.

3. I think no one can deny that all these things which we see are ruled by the power of the gods.

4. Who doubts that our soldiers have already gained possession of the smaller camp? — *College Entrance Board*, 1903 (*Elementary*).

If Cicero had not urged the Senate to declare that the conspirators were no longer citizens, on the ground that they had plotted against their country, he himself would have acted more justly and his enemies would have been unable later to secure his banishment. Nevertheless we must not believe that Cicero was influenced by bad motives. No one ought to doubt that he was very fond of his country and was desirous only of protecting his fellow-citizens from destruction. Without doubt he had persuaded himself that the safety of the country demanded the death of the conspirators. But he ought to have known that he was putting them to death contrary to law. — *College Entrance Board*, 1904 (*Advanced*).

If there had been a larger supply of grain in this camp, I should not have informed you that our soldiers were without food. Since I did not know what else we could do, I sent to you these messengers that we might learn whether you could send us help. No one doubted that you were in the same place near the territory of the Allobroges. — *College Entrance Board, 1904 (Elementary).*

1. On receiving the letter, the general sent messengers to say that the Romans desired peace, but would fight all who attacked them. Meanwhile he fortified his camp and got together as large a supply of provisions as possible. Two days afterwards the enemy came in sight, but soon withdrew. Nevertheless the Roman general asked for reënforcements, since it was clear that the enemy would return next year in still greater force. He now realized that he must show the greatest diligence, that the soldiers must be encouraged, and that spies must be sent to learn the movements of the enemy. In this way the winter passed.

2. I am sorry that I said that I would not go. Now I do not know what to do. What do you advise? Tell me what you really think, for I trust you in every thing. — *Princeton, 1904.*

1. Caesar set out to the army earlier than was his wont. Upon his arrival he learned that what he had suspected would be done had actually been done: that embassies had been sent by several states to the Germans, and that the latter had been invited to leave

the Rhine [with the promise] that all their demands should be granted.

2. Therefore, since the war is so necessary that it cannot be neglected, so great that it must be carried on with the utmost care, and since you are able to place in command of it a general who has full knowledge of the art of war, exceptional valor, splendid reputation, wonderful fortune, do you still hesitate, citizens, to employ [use verb *conferre*] for the preservation and enlargement of the state this great blessing, which the immortal gods have offered you? — *Wellesley, 1902.*

1. The next day they moved the camp from that place. Caesar did the same and sent forward all the cavalry to the number of four thousand to see in what direction the enemy were marching. Word was brought to Caesar that these, following too eagerly upon the enemy's rear, had engaged in battle with the cavalry of the Helvetians and had been repulsed. Caesar kept his men from fighting, until by forced marches they had come to a place about six miles distant from the enemy's camp. Then at last Liscus was persuaded to tell what he knew of the plans of the Haedui.

2. Since I have spoken of the character of the war, I will now say a few words as to its magnitude. For this can be said, that the war is so necessary that it must be waged, not so great that it must be dreaded.

3. Therefore, fellow-citizens, do you, as I have said, defend your houses by night-watches: I have made provision that the city should have sufficient protection without any disturbance. — *Wellesley, 1904.*

## GENERAL VOCABULARY.

NOTE. — Words enclosed in parentheses are not themselves defined, but are inserted to assist in the definition of other words. Regular verbs of the first conjugation are indicated by the numeral 1 following the present indicative.

### A.

<p>able, be able, <b>possum, posse, potuī.</b></p> <p>abode, <b>domicilium, ī, n.</b></p> <p>about, concerning, <b>dē, prep.</b> with abl.</p> <p>about, around, <b>circum, prep.</b> with acc.</p> <p>absent, be absent, <b>absum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.</b></p> <p>accept, <b>accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus.</b></p> <p>accomplish, <b>efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus; cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.</b></p> <p>accordingly, <b>itaque.</b></p> <p>(account), on account of, <b>propter, prep.</b> with acc.</p> <p>accuse, <b>accūsō, 1.</b></p> <p>accustomed, am accustomed, perfect tenses of <b>cōnsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus.</b></p> <p>acquainted, be acquainted with, perfect tenses of <b>cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus.</b></p> <p>across, <b>trāns, prep.</b> with acc.</p> <p>act, <b>factum, ī, n.</b></p> <p>(added), be added, <b>accēdō, ere,</b></p>	<p><b>cessī, cessūrus; literally, approach; it is added, accēdit, ere, accessit.</b></p> <p>adjudge, <b>jūdicō, 1.</b></p> <p>admire, <b>admīror, 1.</b></p> <p>admonition, give admonition, <b>admoneō, ēre, uī, itus.</b></p> <p>adopt (a plan), <b>capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.</b></p> <p>advance, <b>prōgredior, ī, gressus sum.</b></p> <p>advantage, <b>commodum, ī, n.; ūsus, ūs, m.</b></p> <p>advice, <b>cōnsilium, ī, n.</b></p> <p>advise, <b>moneō, ēre, uī, itus.</b></p> <p>advocate, promoter, auctor, <b>ōris, m.</b></p> <p>afraid, be afraid, <b>timeō, ēre, uī.</b></p> <p>Africa, <b>Āfrica, ae, f.</b></p> <p>after, <b>postquam, conj.</b></p> <p>after, <b>post, prep.</b> with acc.</p> <p>afterwards, <b>postea.</b></p> <p>against, <b>in, prep.</b> with acc.</p> <p>against, contrary to, <b>contrā, prep.</b> with acc.</p> <p>(age), at the age of, <b>nātus, construed with the acc. of the age.</b></p>
---	---

- ago, ante, adv.  
aid, subsidium, ī, n.  
Alesia, Alesia, ae, f.  
alive, vivus, a, um.  
all, omnis, e.  
    all the best, noblest, etc.,  
    quisque, with superl.  
allies, socii, ōrum, m.  
Allobroges, Allobrogēs, um, m.  
allow, sinō, ere, sivi, situs.  
almost, paene.  
Alps, Alpēs, ium, f.  
already, jam.  
    already for a long time, jam  
    diū.  
also, etiam; quoque, post-positi-  
    tive.  
alter, convertō, ere, verti, ver-  
    sus.  
although, though, quamquam;  
    quamvis; cum.  
always, semper.  
ambassador, lēgātus, ī, m.  
ambush, insidiae, ārum, f.  
among, apud, prep. with acc.  
    among, between, in the midst  
    of, inter, prep. with acc.  
    among, in, in, prep. with abl.  
ancestors, mājōrēs, um, m.  
ancient, prīstinus, a, um; anti-  
    quus, a, um.  
and, et; -que (enclitic); atque.  
    and not, nēve, neu; neque.  
    and yet, quamquam.  
angry, be angry, irāscor, ī, con-  
    strued with dat.  
announce, nūntiō, l.  
another, alius, a, ud.  
answer, respondeō, ēre, spondi,  
    spōnsum.  
anybody, any one, anything,  
    quisquam, quaequam, quic-  
    quam; quis, quid.  
Apollo, Apollō, inis, m.  
appearance, speciēs, ēi, f.  
appoint, cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus.  
    appoint, elect, creō, l; ap-  
    point (a dictator), dicō,  
    ere, dixi, dictus.  
approach, adventus, ūs, m.  
approach somebody or some-  
    thing, adeō, ire, ii, itus  
    (trans.); accēdō, ere, cessi,  
    cessurus, followed by ad  
    with acc.  
approve, probō, l.  
April, of April, Aprīlis, e.  
Aquilaia, Aquilēia, ae, f.  
Aquitania, Aquitānia, ae, f.  
Arar, Arar, aris, m.  
archer, sagittārius, ī, m.  
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, m.  
arm, armō, l.  
armament, armor, armātūra,  
    ae, f.  
armed, armātus, a, um.  
arms, weapons, arma, ōrum, n.  
army, exercitus, ūs, m.  
    army (on the march), ag-  
    men, inis, n.  
arrest, comprehendō, ere, hendi,  
    hēnsus.  
arrival, adventus, ūs, m.  
arrive, adveniō, ire, vēni, ven-  
    tum; perveniō, ire, vēni,  
    ventum.



arrogant, *insolēns, entis*.  
 Arverni, *Arvernī, ōrum, m.*  
 as, *ut*.  
   as, when, *cum* ; *ut* ; *ubi*.  
   as, correlative with previous  
     *so* or *as*, *quam*.  
   as = *so*, *tam*.  
   as if, as though, *quasi*.  
   as long as, *dum*.  
   as not to, after *so*, *such*,  
     etc., in a negative clause,  
     *quān*.  
   as soon as, *simul atque (ac)*.  
 ascent, *ascēsus, ūs, m.*  
 ashamed, it shames, *pu-det, ēre,*  
   *uit*, impersonal.  
 ask (a question), *rogō* ; *inter-*  
   *rogō, l.*  
   ask, inquire of, *quaerō, ere,*  
     *quaesivī, quaesitus.*  
   ask, request, *rogō, l.*  
 assassination, *caedēs, is, f.*  
 assault, *oppugnātiō, ōnis, f.*  
 assemble (intrans.), *conveniō,*  
   *īre, vēnī, ventum.*  
 assembly, *concilium, ī, n.*  
 assistance, *auxilium, ī, n.*  
 at, *ad*, prep. with acc.; also *in*,  
   prep. with abl.  
   (at hand), be at hand, *adsum,*  
     *esse, adfuī, adfuturus.*  
   at once, *statim*.  
 attack (noun), *impetus, ūs, m.*  
 attack (verb), *adorior, irī, ortus*  
   *sum.*  
   attack, assault (a town), *op-*  
     *pugnō, l.*  
 attempt, *cōnor, l.*

attend, accompany, *comitor, l.*  
 authority, *auctōritās, ātis, f.*  
 auxiliaries, *auxilia, ōrum, n.*  
 avail, *valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus.*  
 avenge, *ulcīscor, ī, ultus.*  
 avenue, avenue of approach,  
   *aditus, ūs, m.*  
 avoid, *vītō, l.*  
 await, *expectō, l.*  
 away, be away, be distant, *ab-*  
   *sum, esse, āfuī, āfuturus.*

B.

bad, *malus, a, um.*  
 baggage, *impedimenta, ōrum,*  
   *n.*  
 band, *manus, ūs, f.*  
 baneful, *capitālis, e.*  
 bank, *rīpa, ae, f.*  
 barbarians, *barbarī, ōrum, m.*  
 battle, *proelium, ī, n.* ; *pūgna,*  
   *ae, f.*  
 be, *sum, esse, fuī, futurus.*  
   be without, *careō, ēre, uī, itū-*  
     *rus.*  
 bear, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.*  
   bear in mind, *meminī, isse,*  
     with gen. of the person.  
 because, *quod* ; *quia* ; *cum*.  
 become, *fīō, fierī, factus sum.*  
 before, in the presence of,  
   *apud, ad*, preps. with acc.  
 before, *ante* ; *anteā*, adv.  
 before, *antequam, priusquam,*  
   conj.  
 beg, *ōrō, l.*  
 begin, *coepī, coepisse* ; when  
   governing a pass. inf. the

- perf. ind. is regularly *coep-*  
*tus est*.  
 begin (a thing), *īstituō, ere,*  
*uī, ūtus*; begin (battle),  
*proelium committō, ere,*  
*mīsī, missus*.  
 beginning, *initium, ī, n.*  
 behold, *aspiciō, ere, spexī,*  
*spectus*.  
 Belgians, *Belgae, ārum, m.*  
 believe, *crēdō, ere, crēdidī,*  
*crēditus*.  
 besides (prep.), *praeter*, with  
 acc.  
 besides (adv.), *praetereā*.  
 best, superl. of *bonus*.  
 betake oneself, *recipiō, ere,*  
*cēpī, ceptus*, with a re-  
 flexive.  
 betray, *prōdō, ere, prōdidī,*  
*ditus*.  
 better, adj., *melior*; adv.,  
*melius*.  
 between, *inter*, prep. with acc.  
 Bibracte, *Bibracte, is, n.*  
 Bibulus, *Bibulus, ī, m.*  
 blame (noun), *culpa, ae, f.*  
 blame (verb), *culpō, 1.*  
 blessing, *commodum, ī, n.*  
 block, obstruct, *obstruō, ere,*  
*strūxī, strūctus*.  
 bloodshed, *caedēs, is, f.*  
 blue, *caeruleus, a, um.*  
 boast, make a boast, *glōrior, 1.*  
 boat, *nāvīgum, ī, n.*  
 body, *corpus, oris, n.*  
 book, *liber, librī, m.*  
 booty, *praeda, ae, f.*
- borders, *fīnēs, ium, m.*  
 born, be born, *nāscor, ī, nātus*  
*sum*.  
 born, *nātus, a, um.*  
 both . . . and, *et . . . et*.  
 both, each, *uterque, utraque,*  
*utrumque*.  
 boy, *puer, erī, m.*  
 brave, *fortis, e*.  
 bravely, *fortiter*.  
 bravery, *fortitūdō, inis, f.*  
 break (of camp), *moveō, ēre,*  
*mōvī, mōtus*.  
 bridge, *pōns, pontis, m.*  
 bring, *afferō, ferre, attulī, al-*  
*lātus*.  
 bring back, *redūcō, ere, dūxī,*  
*ductus*.  
 bring back word, *referō,*  
*ferre, rettulī, relātus*.  
 bring under, *redigō, ere, ēgī,*  
*āctus*.  
 bring on or upon, *īnferō, ferre,*  
*intulī, illātus*; with dat.  
 of indir. obj.  
 Britain, *Britannia, ae, f.*  
 Britons, *Britannī, ōrum, m.*  
 broad, *lātus, a, um.*  
 brother, *frāter, tris, m.*  
 brushwood, *virgulta, ōrum, n.*  
 build, *struō, ere, strūxī, strūc-*  
*tus*; (a bridge) *faciō, ere,*  
*fēcī, factus*.  
 burn (tr.). of things, *combūrō,*  
*ere, ussī, ūstus*; of per-  
 sons, *cremō, 1.*  
 but (if strongly adversative),  
*sed*.

but (denoting transition), <b>autem</b> , post-positive.	change (of affairs), <b>rēs novae, rērum novārum, f.</b>
but if, <b>sīn.</b>	character, nature, <b>nātūra, ae, f.</b>
buy, <b>emō, ere, emī, emptus.</b>	character, acquired character, <b>mōrēs, um, m.</b>
by (of personal agent), <b>ā, ab,</b> prep. with abl.	characteristic of, <b>proprius, a, um.</b>
by no means, <b>minimē.</b>	charge, be in charge, <b>praesum, esse, fuī,</b> construed with dat.
<b>C.</b>	
Caesar, <b>Caesar, is, m.</b>	charge, put in charge, <b>prae-ficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus,</b> construed with dat.
call, name, <b>appellō, 1.</b>	chariot, war chariot, <b>essedum, ī, n.</b>
call, summon, <b>vocō, 1.</b>	cherish, <b>colō, ere, coluī, cultus.</b>
call together, <b>convocō, 1.</b>	chief, <b>prīnceps, ipis, m.</b>
camp, castra, <b>ōrum, n.</b>	chieftain, <b>prīncēps, ipis, m.</b>
can, be able, <b>possum, posse, potuī.</b>	children, <b>liberī, ōrum, m.</b>
captīve, <b>captīvus, ī, m.</b>	choose, <b>dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.</b>
capture, <b>capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.</b>	Cincinnatus, <b>Cincinnātus, ī, m.</b>
care, <b>cūra, ae, f.</b>	citizen, fellow-citizen, <b>cīvis, is, m.</b>
carry, <b>portō, 1.</b>	city, <b>urbs, urbis, f.</b>
carry (in), <b>īferō, ferre, intulī, illātus.</b>	civil, <b>cīvilis, e.</b>
Carthage, <b>Karthāgō, inis, f.</b>	clear, be clear, <b>cōnstat, āre, stitit, impersonal.</b>
Cassius, <b>Cassius, ī, m.</b>	clearly hear, <b>exaudiō, īre, īvī, ītus.</b>
Casticus, <b>Casticus, ī, m.</b>	climb, <b>ascendō, ere, endī, ēnsus.</b>
Catamantaloedes, <b>Catamantaloedēs, is, m.</b>	climb over, <b>trāscendō, ere, scendī.</b>
Cato, <b>Catō, ōnis, m.</b>	cohort, <b>cohors, rtis, f.</b>
cause, <b>causa, ae, f.</b>	collect, <b>colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.</b>
cavalry, <b>equitātus, ūs, m.; equitēs, um, m. pl.</b>	colony, <b>colōnia, ae, f.</b>
cease, <b>dēsistō, ere, dēstitī.</b>	come, <b>veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.</b>
centurion, <b>centuriō, ōnis, m.</b>	
century (military division), <b>centuria, ae, f.</b>	
certain, certain one, <b>quīdam, quaedam, quiddam</b> or <b>quoddam.</b>	

come up, arrive, <b>adveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum.</b>	conspiracy, <b>conjūrātiō, ōnis, f.</b>
command, <b>mandātum, ī, n.</b>	conspirators, <b>conjūrātī, ōrum, m.</b>
commander, <b>dux, ducis, m. ; imperātor, ōris, m.</b>	conspire, <b>conjūrō, l.</b>
commander-in-chief, <b>imperātor, ōris, m.</b>	consternation, <b>perturbātiō, ōnis, f.</b>
commentary, <b>commentārius, ī, m.</b>	consul, <b>cōsul, is, m̄.</b>
common, <b>commūnis, e.</b>	consulship, <b>cōsulātus, ūs, m.</b>
complain, <b>queror, ī, questus sum.</b>	consult, <b>cōsulō, ere, uī, sultus,</b> with the acc.
complete, <b>perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.</b>	consult for, <b>cōsulō, ere, uī, sultus,</b> with the dat.
complexion, color, <b>ōris, m.</b>	contempt, <b>contemptiō, ōnis, f.</b>
comrade, <b>commilitō, ōnis, m.</b>	contented, <b>contentus, a, um.</b>
concern, it concerns, interest, <b>esse, fuit ; rēfert, ferre, rētulit,</b> impersonal.	contrary to, <b>contrā, prep.</b> with acc.
concerning, <b>dē, prep.</b> with abl.	controversy, <b>contrōversia, ae, f.</b>
condemn, <b>condemnō, l.</b>	convict, <b>condemnō, l.</b>
conduct, manage, <b>gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.</b>	council, <b>concilium, ī, n.</b>
confer (with), <b>colloquor, ī, locūtus.</b>	country, native country, <b>patria, ae, f.</b>
conference, <b>colloquium, ī, n.</b>	country (as opposed to the city), <b>rūs, rūris, n.</b>
confidence, trustworthiness, <b>fidēs, eī, f.</b>	courage, <b>animus, ī, m.</b>
confident, <b>cōfidēns, entis.</b>	courageously, <b>fortiter.</b>
confusion, tumultus, <b>ūs, m.</b>	cowardice, <b>ignāvia, ae, f.</b>
congratulate, <b>grātulor, ārī, ātus sum,</b> with the dat.	Crassus, <b>Crassus, ī, m.</b>
consecrate, <b>cōnsecrō, l.</b>	crime, <b>scelus, eris, n.</b>
consequence, in consequence of, <b>propter, prep.</b> with acc.	cross, <b>trānseō, ire, iī, itūrus.</b>
consider, regard, <b>putō, l ; exīstimō, l.</b>	cruel, <b>crūdēlis, e.</b>
	cruelty, <b>crūdēlitās, ātis, f.</b>
	crush, <b>opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus.</b>
	cry (of distress), <b>plōrātus, ūs, m.</b>
	cultivate, <b>colō, ere, coluī, cultus.</b>

custom, *mōs, mōris, m.*  
 cut off, *interclūdō, ere, clūsī, cīsus.*  
 cut to pieces, *occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus.*

D.

danger, *perīculum, ī, n.*  
 dare, *audeō, ēre, ausus.*  
 daughter, *filia, ae, f.*  
 day, *diēs, ēī, m.*  
 dead, *mortuus, a, um.*  
 deadly, *capitālis, e.*  
 dear, *cārus, a, um.*  
 death, *mors, mortis, f.*  
     to death, with verbs of condemning, *capite (caput, itis, n.).*  
 decide, *cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus.*  
 decision, *jūdicium, ī, n.*  
 declare, *dēclārō, l.*  
 decree, *dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus.*  
 dedicate, *dēdicō, l.*  
 deed, *factum, ī, n.*  
 deep, *altus, a, um.*  
 defeat, *superō, l.*  
 defence, *dēfēnsiō, ōnis, f.*  
 defend, *dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsus.*  
 defender, *dēfēnsor, ōris, m.*  
 delay, *moror, l.*  
 deliberate, *dēlīberō, l.*  
 deliver (a speech), *habeō, ēre, uī, itus.*  
     deliver from, *līberō, l.*  
 Delos, *Dēlos, ī, f.*  
 demand (verb), *postulō, l ;*

*flāgitō, l ;* *poscō, ere, poposci.*  
 demand (noun), *postulātum, ī, n.*  
 depart, *dēcēdō, ere, cessī, ces-sūrus.*  
 departure, *dēcessus, ūs, m.*  
 depend, *nītor, ī, nīsus or nīxus sum.*  
 deprive, *prīvō, l.*  
 desert, *dēserō, ere, seruī, sertus.*  
 deserter, *perfuga, ae, m.*  
 desire, wish, *optō, l.*  
 desire, eagerness, *cupiditās, ātis, f. ; libīdō, inis, f.*  
 desirous, *cupidus, a, um ; avidus, a, um.*  
 desist, *dēsistō, ere, dēstitī.*  
 despair of, *dēspērō, l, with the acc.*  
 despise, *contemnō, ere, temp-sī, temptus.*  
 destroy, wipe out, *dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus.*  
     destroy, break down, *re-scindō, ere, scidī, scissus.*  
 detain, *retineō, ēre, uī, tentus.*  
 devote, devote one's self to something, *dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus, with a reflexive pronoun.*  
 Diana, *Diāna, ae, f.*  
 dictator, *dictātor, ōris, m.*  
 die, *morior, morī, mortuus sum.*  
 difficult, *difficilis, e.*

difficulty, <i>difficultās, ātis, f.</i>	
dig (a trench), <i>dūcō, ere, dūxī,</i>	
<i>ductus, lit. lead, run.</i>	
disagree, <i>dissentiō, īre, sēnsī.</i>	
disaster, <i>clādēs, is, f.</i>	
discipline, <i>disciplīna, ae, f.</i>	
discuss, <i>disputō, l.</i>	
disembark, <i>ē nāvī or nāvibus</i>	
<i>ēgredior, ī, gressus.</i>	
dissension, <i>dissēnsiō, ōnis, f.</i>	
distant, be distant, <i>absum, esse,</i>	
<i>āfuī, āfutūrus.</i>	
distribute, <i>distribuō, ere, uī,</i>	
<i>ūtus.</i>	
district, <i>regiō, ōnis, f.</i>	
ditch, <i>fossa, ae, f.</i>	
Divico, <i>Dīvicō, ōnis, m.</i>	
Divitiacus, <i>Dīvitiācus, ī, m.</i>	
do, <i>faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.</i>	
doubt, <i>dubitō, l.</i>	
draw near, <i>appropinquō, l,</i>	
<i>construed with dat.</i>	
draw on, lure on, <i>trahō, ere,</i>	
<i>trāxī, trāctus.</i>	
draw up, <i>īnstruō, ere, strūxī,</i>	
<i>strūctus.</i>	
drive, drive away, drive out,	
drive from, <i>expellō, ere,</i>	
<i>pulī, pulsus.</i>	
drive back, <i>repellō, ere, rep-</i>	
<i>pulī, repulsus.</i>	
Druids, <i>Druidēs, um, m.</i>	
Dumnorix, <i>Dumnorīx, īgis, m.</i>	
duty, <i>officium, ī, n.</i>	
dwell, <i>incolō, ere, coluī, cultus ;</i>	
<i>figuratively, īnsum, inesse,</i>	
<i>īnfuī, construed with in</i>	
<i>and the abl.</i>	
	<b>E.</b>
	each, <i>quisque, quaeque, quic-</i>
	<i>que.</i>
	each (of two), <i>uterque, utra-</i>
	<i>que, utrumque.</i>
	each other, for the first and
	second persons, use the
	plural of <i>ego</i> and <i>tū</i> ; for
	the third person, use <i>suī</i> .
	eager, eager for, <i>cupidus, a, um,</i>
	with the gen.
	eagerly, <i>ācritēr.</i>
	eagerness, zeal, <i>studium, ī, n. ;</i>
	<i>cupiditās, ātis, f.</i>
	eagle, <i>aquila, ae, f.</i>
	earnestly, <i>vehementer.</i>
	easily, <i>facile.</i>
	easy, <i>facilis, e.</i>
	efforts, <i>opera, ae, f.</i>
	eight, <i>octō, indecl.</i>
	eighteen, <i>duodēvigintī, indecl.</i>
	eighth, <i>octāvus, a, um.</i>
	eight hundred, <i>octingentī, ae, a.</i>
	eighty, <i>octōgintā.</i>
	either . . . or, <i>aut . . . aut,</i> if the
	two alternatives exclude
	each other ; otherwise <i>vel</i>
	. . . <i>vel.</i>
	either, either one (of two),
	<i>utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs.</i>
	eldest, <i>māximus, māximus</i>
	<i>nātū.</i>
	elect, <i>creō, l.</i>
	election, <i>comitia, ōrum, n.</i>
	elevated, <i>excelsus, a, um.</i>
	else, <i>alius, a, ud.</i>
	embankment, <i>agger, eris, m.</i>

- embezzlement, **peculātus, ūs, m.**  
 emigrate, **ēmigrō, 1.**  
 empty, **inānis, e.**  
 (end), at the end of, **extrēmus, a, um,** with a substantive.  
 endure, **perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.**  
 enemy (in military sense), **hostis, is, c. ; (collectively), hostēs, ium, m.**  
 personal enemy, **inimīcus, ī, m.**  
 energy, **virtūs, ūtis, f.**  
 enjoin, enjoin upon, **praecipīō, ere, cēpī, ceptus,** construed with dat. of the person.  
 enjoy, **fruor, ī, fruitūrus.**  
 enough, **satis.**  
 enroll, **cōnscribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus.**  
 enter into, enter upon, **ineō, īre, iī, itus.**  
 entire, **tōtus, a, um.**  
 entirely, **omnīnō.**  
 envoy, **lēgātus, ī, m.**  
 envy, **invidēō, ēre, vidī, vīsum,** with dat.  
 error, **error, ōris, m.**  
 escape, get away (intrans.), **ēvādō, ere, vāsī, vāsum.**  
 escape something, **effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.**  
 especially, **praecipuē.**  
 even, **etiam.**  
 not even, **nē . . . quidem,** with the emphatic word or phrase between.
- ever, at any time, **unquam.**  
 ever, always, **semper.**  
 every, **omnis, e.**  
 evil (noun), **malum, ī, n.**  
 excellent, **ēgregius, a, um.**  
 except, **praeter,** prep. with acc.  
 excuse, **excūsatiō, ōnis, f.**  
 exempt, **liber, a, um.**  
 exercise, **ūtor, ī, ūsus.**  
 exhibit, **praestō, āre, stitī, stitus.**  
 (expected, supposed, — sooner, larger) than expected or supposed, **opīniōne, abl. of opīniō, ōnis.**  
 experienced, **perītus, a, um.**  
 exploits, **rēs gestae, rērum gestārum, f.**  
 extend (thanks), **agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.**  
 eye, **oculus, ī, m.**
- F.**
- faction, **factiō, ōnis, f.**  
 fair, just, **aequus, a, um.**  
 fall upon, **incidō, ere, incidī,** with the dat.  
 family, stock, genus, **eris, n.**  
 famous, **clārus, a, um.**  
 far, **longē, adv.**  
 farther, **ulterior, us.**  
 fate, **fātum, ī, n.**  
 father, **pater, patris, m.**  
 favor, **beneficium, ī, n.**  
 fear (noun), **metus, ūs, m.**  
 fear (verb), **metuō, ere, uī ; vereor, ērī, itus.**  
 fertile, **ferāx, ācis.**

- few, *paucī*, ae, a.  
 very few, *perpaucī*, ae, a.  
 field, *ager*, *agrī*, m.  
 fifteen, *quīndecim*.  
 fifth, *quīntus*, a, um.  
 fight, *pūgnō*, l.  
 fill, *compleō*, ēre, ēvī, ētus.  
 filled, *complētus*, a, um.  
 filled, crowded full of, *refer-  
 tus*, a, um.  
 finally, *postrēmō*.  
 find (by searching), *reperiō*,  
*īre*, *repperī*, *repertus*.  
 find, come upon, *inveniō*, *īre*,  
*vēnī*, *ventus*.  
 find out something (by inves-  
 tigation), *comperiō*, *īre*,  
*perī*, *pertus*.  
 find (good, bad, etc.), *ūtor*,  
*ī*, *ūsus*, with pred. abl.  
 find, secure, obtain, *pariō*,  
*ere*, *peperī*, *partus*; *nan-  
 cīscor*, *ī*, *nactus*.  
 finish, *perficiō*, ere, *fēcī*, *fectus*;  
*cōnficiō*, ere, *fēcī*, *fectus*.  
 first, *prīmus*, a, um.  
 first (adv.), *prīmum*; at first,  
*prīmō*.  
 fit, *idōneus*, a, um.  
 five, *quīnque*.  
 fixed, *certus*, a, um.  
 flee, *fugiō*, ere, *fūgī*, *fugitūrus*.  
 fleet, *classis*, is, f.  
 flight, *fuga*, ae, f.  
 flourishing, *flōrēns*, entis.  
 follow, *sequor*, *ī*, *secūtus*.  
 follower, *comes*, itis, c.  
 folly, *stultitia*, ae, f.  
 food, *cibus*, *ī*, m.  
 foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, m.  
 foot of, base of, *īmus*, a, um.  
 foot-soldier, *pedes*, itis, m.  
 for, denoting purpose, *ad*, prep.  
 with acc.; denoting motion,  
*in*, with acc.  
 for (conj.), *nam*; or *enim*, post-  
 positive.  
 forbid, *vetō*, *āre*, *uī*, itus.  
 force, compel, *cōgō*, ere, *coēgī*,  
*coāctus*.  
 force, *vīs*, vis, f.  
 forces, *cōpiae*, *ārum*, f.  
 foresight, *prūdētia*, ae, f.  
 forest, *silva*, ae, f.  
 forget, *oblīvīscor*, *ī*, *oblītus sum*.  
 form, make, *faciō*, ere, *fēcī*, *fac-  
 tus*.  
 former . . . (latter), *ille*, a, ud.  
 former, with reference to the  
 present, *superior*, *us*.  
 formerly, *ōlim*.  
 fortification, *mūnītiō*, *ōnis*, f.  
 fortify, *mūniō*, *īre*, *īvī*, itus.  
 fortune, *fortūna*, ae, f.  
 fortune (in sense of prop-  
 erty), *fortūnae*, *ārum*, f.  
 forty, *quadrāgintā*.  
 Forum, *Forum*, *ī*, n.  
 found, *condō*, ere, *didī*, *ditus*.  
 four, *quattuor*.  
 frame, *corpus*, *oris*, n.  
 free (adj.), *liber*, a, um.  
 free (verb), *liberō*, l.  
 freedom, *libertās*, *ātis*, f.  
 friend, *amīcus*, *ī*, m.; *amīca*,  
 ae, f.



friendly, **amīcus, a, um.**  
 friendship, **amīcītia, ae, f.**  
 from, **ā, ab** ; from, out of, **ē, ex** ;  
 down from, **dē** ; preposi-  
 tions with **abl.**  
 from the vicinity of, **ā, ab,**  
 with **abl.**  
 from (after verbs of *hinder-*  
*ing*, etc.), **quō minus,**  
**nē, quīn.**  
 fruit, **frūctus, ūs, m.**  
 full, **plēnus, a, um.**  
 furnish, **praebeō, ēre, uī, itus.**  
 furthest, **superl. of longē.**

G.

gain possession of, **potior, irī,**  
**ītus.**  
 Gaius, **Gāius, ī, m.** ; abbreviated  
**C.**  
 Galba, **Galba, ae, m.**  
 Gallic, **Gallicus, a, um.**  
 garrison, **praesidium, ī, n.**  
 gate, **porta, ae, f.**  
 gather (intrans.), **conveniō, ire,**  
**vēnī, ventum.**  
 gather (trans.), **cōgō, ere, coēgī,**  
**coāctus.**  
 Gaul, a Gaul, **Gallus, ī, m.**  
 Gaul, the country, **Gallia,**  
**ae, f.**  
 general, **dux, ducis, m.**  
 Geneva, **Genava, ae, f.**  
 Gergovia, **Gergovia, ae, f.**  
 German, **Germānus, a, um** ; as  
 noun, **Germānī, ōrum, m.**  
 Germany, **Germānia, ae, f.**  
 get possession, **potior, irī, itus.**

get ready (trans.), **comparō, l.**  
 gift, **dōnum, ī, n.**  
 give, **dō, dare, dedī, datus.**  
 glory, **glōria, ae, f.**  
 Gnaeus, **Gnaeus, ī, m.** ; abbrev-  
 viated **Cn.**  
 go, **eō, ire, ivī, itum.**  
 go around, **circumeō, ire, ii,**  
**itus.**  
 go away, **abeō, ire, ii, iturus.**  
 go forth, **exeō, ire, ii, itum.**  
 good, **bonus, a, um.**  
 gradually, **paulātīm.**  
 grain, **frūmentum, ī, n.**  
 grant, **dō, dare, dedī, datus** ;  
**concedō, ere, cessī, ces-**  
**sūrus.**  
 great, **māgnus, a, um.**  
 greatest (of qualities), **sum-**  
**mus, a, um.**  
 greatly, **māgnopere.**  
 grieve, grieve over, **doleō, ēre,**  
**uī, iturus.**  
 guard, protection, **praesidium,**  
**ī, n.**  
 guard, a guard, **cūstōs,**  
**ōdis, c.**  
 guardian, **cūstōs, ōdis, c.**

H.

habit, **mōs, mōris, m.**  
 Haedian (adj.), **Haedus, a,**  
**um** ; as noun, **Haedus, ī,**  
**m.** ; Haedui, **Haedui, ōrum.**  
 hand, **manus, ūs, f.**  
 (hand), on (left) hand,  
 (right) hand, etc., **parte**  
 (abl. of **pars, partis, f.**).

- hand, be at hand, *adsum, esse, adfuī, adfutūrus.*
- hand, be on hand, *suppetō, ere, īvī* or *īī, ītum.*
- hand over, *trādō, ere, didī, ditus.*
- happen, be done, *fiō, fierī, factus.*
- happen, *accidō, ere, ī; accidit, ere, accidit, impersonal.*
- harbor, *portus, ūs, m.*
- hardship, labor, *ōris, m.*
- harm, do harm, *noceō, ēre, uī, itūrus,* with dat. of indirect obj.
- hasten (to do something), *mātūrō, l; hasten, press on, contendō, ere, endī, entum.*
- hate, *ōdī, ōdisse.*
- hateful, *odiōsus, a, um.*
- hatred, *odium, ī, n.*
- haughty, *superbus, a, um.*
- have, *habeō, ēre, uī, itus.*
- he who, is *quī.*
- hear, *audiō, īre, īvī, ītus.*
- hear clearly, *exaudiō, īre, īvī, ītus.*
- heavy, *gravis, e.*
- height, *altitudō, inis, f.*
- help (noun), *auxilium, ī, n.*
- help (verb), *juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus.*
- Helvetii, Helvetians, *Helvētīi, ōrum, m.*
- her, *suus, a, um, reflexive.*
- here, *hīc.*
- here, be here, *adsum, esse, fuī, futūrus.*
- hide, *cēlō, l.*
- high, *altus, a, um.*
- high (of price), *māgnus, a, um.*
- higher, at a higher price (with verbs of *valuing, buying, and selling*), *plūris.*
- highest (of qualities), *summus, a, um.*
- hill, *collis, is, m.*
- hillock, *tumulus, ī, m.*
- himself, herself, *etc., reflexive, suī, sibi, sē.*
- hinder, impede, *impediō, īre, īvī, ītus.*
- hindrance, *impedimentum, ī, n.*
- his, *suus, a, um, reflexive.*
- hither, *citerior, us.*
- hitherto, *antēa.*
- hold, *teneō, ēre, uī.*
- hold, regard, *habeō, ēre, uī, itus.*
- (home), at home, *domī.*
- from home, *domō.*
- to one's home, *domum.*
- honest, upright, *probus, a, um.*
- honor (noun), *honor, ōris, m.*
- honor (verb), *honōrō, l.*
- honorable, *honestus, a, um.*
- hope, *spēs, eī, f.*
- hope, hope for, *spērō, l, with the acc.*
- horse, *equus, ī, m.*
- horseman, *eques, itis, m.*
- hostage, *obses, idis, c.*
- hostile, *inimīcus, a, um.*
- hour, *hōra, ae, f.*

how, if used to introduce the sentence as a whole, *quī* or *quō modō* in direct questions, *quō modō* or *ut* in indirect ; *quam*, if used to modify an adjective or adverb in the sentence.

how great, *quantus*, a, um.

how many, *quot*, indecl.

how much, *quantum*, followed by gen. of the whole.

however (much), *quamvīs*.

huge, *ingēns*, entis.

humanity, *hūmānitās*, ātis, f.

hundred, *centum*.

hunger, *famēs*, is, f. ; abl. sing. *famē*.

hurl, *coniciō*, ere, *conjēcī*, *conjectus*.

hurry, *contendō*, ere, *tendī*, *tentus*.

I.

I, *ego*, *meī*.

Ides, *Īdūs*, uum, f.

if, *sī*, conj.

if not, *sī minus*, when the verb is omitted.

ignorant, *ignārus*, a, um.

illustrious, *illūstris*, e.

imbue, *imbuō*, ere, *uī*, *ūtus*.

imitate, *imitor*, l.

immediately, *statim*.

immortality, *immortālitās*, ātis, f.

impel, *impellō*, ere, *impulī*, *impulsus*.

imperator, *imperātor*, ōris, m.

in, in, prep. with abl.

inch, *digitus*, ī, m.

inclined to think, *haud sciō an*.

indulge, *indulgeō*, ēre, *dulsī*, *dultūrus*.

infantry, *peditēs*, um, m.

inflame, *incendō*, ere, *cendī*, *cēnsus*.

inflict on, *īferō*, *ferre*, *intulī*, *illātus* ; with dat.

influence, *auctōritās*, ātis, f.

inform, *certiōrem faciō*, ere, *fēcī*, *factus*.

be informed, *certior fiō*, *ferī*, *factus*.

inhabit, *incolō*, ere, *uī*, *cultus*.

inhabitant, *incola*, ae, m.

inherit, receive, *accipiō*, ere, *cēpī*, *ceptus*.

injure, *noceō*, ēre, *uī*, *itūrus*, with the dat., used of persons ; *laedō*, ere, *laesī*, *laesus*, used of both persons and things.

injurious, be injurious, *noceō*, ēre, *uī*, *itūrus*.

injury, *injūria*, ae, f.

inquire, *quaerō*, ere, *quaesivī*, *ītus*.

institution, *īnstitūtum*, ī, n.

interval, *intervāllum*, ī, n.

into, in, prep. with acc.

island, *īnsula*, ae, f.

Italy, *Italia*, ae, f.

its, *ējus* ; *suus*, a, um.

## J.

javelin, *jaculum*, ī, n.  
 journey, *iter*, *itineris*, n.  
 judge, *jūdicō*, 1.  
 judgment, opinion, *sententia*,  
 ae, f.  
 Julius Caesar, *Jūlius Caesar*,  
*Jūli Caesaris*, m.  
 jump down, *dēsiliō*, īre, uī.  
 just, *jūstus*, a, um.  
 justice, *jūstitia*, ae, f.  
 justly, *jūre*.

## K.

Kalends, *Kalendae*, ārum, f.  
 keep, keep in, confine, *teneō*,  
 ēre, uī.  
 keep apart, *distineō*, ēre, uī,  
*tentus*.  
 keep away, ward off, *arceō*,  
 ēre, uī.  
 keep from, keep away from  
 (tr.), *prohibeō*, ēre, uī,  
*itus*.  
 kill, *occidō*, ere, cīdī, cīsus.  
 kind, genus, *eris*, n.; *modus*,  
 ī, m.  
 kindness, *beneficium*, ī, n.  
 king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, m.  
 knight, *eques*, *itis*, m.  
 know, understand, *sciō*, īre, īvī,  
*itus*.  
 know, be familiar with, per-  
 fect tenses of *nōscō*, ere,  
*nōvī*, *nōtus*.  
 not know, *nesciō*, īre, īī.  
 knowledge, *scientia*, ae, f.

## L.

Labienus, *Labiēnus*, ī, m.  
 labor, *labor*, *ōris*, m.  
 lack (noun), *inopia*, ae, f.  
 lack (verb), *careō*, ēre, uī, *itū-*  
*rus*.  
 land, *ager*, *agrī*, m.  
 land, as opposed to the water,  
*terra*, ae, f.  
 language, *lingua*, ae, f.  
 large, *māgnus*, a, um.  
 in large part, *māgnam par-*  
*tem*; *bonam partem*.  
 so large, *tantus*, a, um.  
 last, final, *ultimus*, a, um.  
 last, previous, *proximus*, a,  
 um.  
 last, continue, *dūrō*, 1.  
 later, *post*, *postea*.  
 latter, the latter of two already  
 mentioned, *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*.  
 law, the law, *jūs*, *jūris*, n.  
 law, statute, *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.  
 law-court, *basilica*, ae, f.  
 lay aside, *dēpōnō*, ere, *posuī*,  
*itus*.  
 lay waste, *vāstō*, 1.  
 lead, *dūcō*, ere, *dūxī*, *ductus*.  
 lead across, *trādūcō*, ere,  
*dūxī*, *ductus*.  
 lead back, *redūcō*, ere, *dūxī*,  
*ductus*.  
 lead, lead out, lead away,  
*dēdūcō*, ere, *dūxī*, *ductus*.  
 leader, *dux*, *ducis*, c.  
 learn (by study), *discō*, ere,  
*didicī*.

- learn, find out, **comperiō**,  
**īre**, **perī**, **pertus**.  
leave, **relinquō**, **ere**, **līquī**, **līc-**  
**tus**.  
left, **sinister**, **tra**, **trum**.  
legion, **legiō**, **ōnis**, **f**.  
legionary, **legiōnārius**, **a**, **um**.  
lend (help), **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**,  
**lātus**.  
less, **minus**.  
lessen, **minuō**, **ere**, **uī**, **ūtus**.  
lest, **nē**.  
letter, **litterae**, **ārum**, **f**. ; or  
**epistula**, **ae**, **f**.  
liberal, generous, **largus**, **a**, **um**.  
liberty, **libertās**, **ātis**, **f**.  
lieutenant, **lēgātus**, **ī**, **m**.  
life, **vīta**, **ae**, **f**.  
light, **levis**, **e**.  
    light, fair, **albus**, **a**, **um**.  
light-armed, **expeditus**, **a**, **um**.  
like, **similis**, **e**.  
likewise, expressed by **īdem**, in  
    agreement with subject.  
line of battle, **aciēs**, **ēī**, **f**.  
linger, **moror**, **l**.  
Liscus, **Liscus**, **ī**, **m**.  
list, **tabula**, **ae**, **f**.  
listen, listen to, **audiō**, **īre**, **īvī**,  
    **ītus**, with acc.  
little, a little, **paulum**.  
    very little, **paullulum**, with  
    **gen**.  
    little while before or ago,  
    **paulō ante**.  
live, **vīvō**, **ere**, **vīxī**, **vīctum**.  
live, dwell, **habitō**, **l**.  
lofty, **altus**, **a**, **um** ; **sublīmis**, **e**.  
long, **longus**, **a**, **um**.  
long, long time, **diū**, **adv**. ;  
    already for a long time,  
    **jam diū**.  
longing, **dēsiderium**, **ī**, **n**.  
look down, **dēspiciō**, **ere**, **spexī**,  
    **spectus**.  
looks, **vultūs**, **uum**, **m**, **pl**.  
lose, **āmittō**, **ere**, **mīsī**, **missus**,  
    the general word ; **perdō**,  
    **ere**, **perdidī**, **itus**, where the  
    responsibility of the subj.  
    is implied.  
loss, **damnum**, **ī**, **n**.  
lot, **sors**, **sortis**, **f**.  
love, **amor**, **ōris**, **m**.  
love, **amō**, **l**.  
low (of position), **humilis**, **e**.  
loyal, **fidēlis**, **e**.  
luckless, **īnfēlix**, **īcis**.  
  

**M.**

magistrate, **magistrātus**, **ūs**, **m**.  
mainland, **continēns**, **entis**, **f**.  
make, **faciō**, **ere**, **fēcī**, **factus**.  
    make answer, **respondeō**, **ēre**,  
    **spondī**, **spōnsus**.  
    make ready, **parō**, **l**.  
    make (somebody or some-  
    thing safe, bold, clear,  
    *etc.*), **reddō**, **ere**, **reddidī**,  
    **redditus**.  
man, **homō**, **inis**, **m**., the gen-  
    eral term ; man as opposed  
    to woman, or as a compli-  
    mentary designation, **vir**,  
    **virī**, **m**.  
maniple, **manipulus**, **ī**, **m**.

- many, **multī**, ae, a.  
 march (noun), **iter**, **itineris**, n.  
 march (verb), **iter faciō**, ere,  
**fēcī**, factus.  
 (March), of March, **Mārtius**, a,  
**um**.  
 march out, **ēgredior**, ī, **gressus**  
**sum**.  
 Marcus, **Mārcus**, ī, m. ; abbrevi-  
 ated **M**.  
 maritime, **maritimus**, a, **um**.  
 Mars, **Mārs**, tis, m.  
 matter, thing, **rēs**, **reī**, f.  
 (May), of May, **Mājus**, a, **um**.  
 may, **licet**, ēre, licuit, with the  
 subjunctive.  
 mean, **volō**, velle, **voluī**, with  
 dat. of the reflexive.  
 means, resources, **facultātēs**,  
**um**, f.  
 meanwhile, **intereā**.  
 measure out, **mētior**, **irī**, **mēn-**  
**sus**.  
 meet (trans. or intrans.), **con-**  
**veniō**, ire, **vēnī**, ventus.  
 memory, **memoria**, ae, f.  
 mention, **commemorō**, l.  
 merchant, **mercātor**, ōris, m.  
 mercy, **clēmētia**, ae, f.  
 merit, **virtūs**, ūtis, f.  
 messenger, **nūntius**, ī, m.  
 middle, middle of, **medius**, a,  
**um**.  
 midst, midst of, **medius**, a, **um**.  
 mild, **lēnis**, e.  
 mile, **mille passūs**, lit. *thou-*  
*sand paces* ; pl. **mīlia pas-**  
**suum**.  
 military matters, **rēs mīlitāris**,  
**reī mīlitāris**, f.  
 mindful, **memor**, oris.  
 misfortune, calamitās, ātis, f.  
 mistake, make a mistake,  
**peccō**, l.  
 mode, **modus**, ī, m.  
 money, **pecūnia**, ae, f.  
 month, **mēnsis**, is, m.  
 more, **amplius**, magis, adv.  
 more, **plūs**, **plūris**, n., sub-  
 stantive.  
 most, **plērīque**, aeque, aque.  
 for the most part; **māximam**  
**partem**.  
 mother, **māter**, **mātris**, f.  
 mountain, **mōns**, **montis**, m.  
 move, **moveō**, ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtus**.  
 much, **multus**, a, **um** ; adverbially,  
**multum**.  
 multitude, **multitūdō**, inis, f.  
 my, **meus**, a, **um**.  
 N.  
 name, **nōmen**, inis, n.  
 Narbo, **Narbō**, ōnis, m.  
 narrow, **angustus**, a, **um**.  
 nation, **gēns**, **gentis**, f. ; **nātiō**,  
**ōnis**, f.  
 naval, **nāvālis**, e.  
 near, neighboring, **fīnitimus**,  
**a**, **um**.  
 near, with town names, **ad**,  
 prep. with acc. ; with other  
 words, **prope**, prep. with  
 acc.  
 nearer, **propius**, adv. and prep.  
 with acc.

- nearest, **proximus, a, um.**  
 nearly, **prope.**  
 necessary, **necessarius, a, um.**  
 it is necessary, **necesse est.**  
 need, there is need, **opus est.**  
 need, feel need, be in need,  
**egeō, ēre, uī; indigeō, ēre,**  
**uī.**  
 neglect, **neglegō, ere, lēxī, lēc-**  
**tus.**  
 neighborhood, in, or to the  
 neighborhood of, **ad, prep.**  
 with acc.  
 neighboring, **finitimus, a, um.**  
 neither . . . nor, **neque . . .**  
**neque; nec . . . nec.**  
 Nervii, **Nerviī, ōrum, m.**  
 never, **numquam.**  
 nevertheless, **tamen.**  
 new, **novus, a, um.**  
 news, as gen. of the whole,  
**novī.**  
 next, **proximus, a, um.**  
 night, **nox, noctis, f.**  
 no, **nūllus, a, um.**  
 no, with adjectives used sub-  
 stantively, **nēmō** (defec-  
 tive).  
 no one, **nēmō** (defective).  
 noble, **nōbilis, e.**  
 noise, **strepitus, ūs, m.**  
 Nones, **Nōnae, ārum, f.**  
 nor, **neque** or **nec.**  
 not, **nōn, nē.**  
 if . . . not, **nisi.**  
 (not), is not? does not? *etc.*,  
**nōnne.**  
 not even, **nē . . . quidem,**
- with the emphatic word  
 between.  
 not know, **nesciō, īre, īvī, or**  
**īi.**  
 not only . . . but also, **nōn**  
**sōlum . . . sed etiam.**  
 not that, **nōn quō.**  
 not yet, **nōndum.**  
 nothing, **nihil.**  
 now, already, **jam.**  
 now, at the present time, **nunc.**  
 number, **numerus, ī, m.**  
 numbers, **multitūdō, inis, f.**  
 (numbers), in great numbers,  
**frequēns, entis.**
- O.**
- O, Ō,** interjection.  
 oath, **jūs jūrandum, jūris jū-**  
**randī, n.**  
 obey, **pāreō, ēre, uī, itūrus.**  
 obstinacy, **pertinācia, ae, f.**  
 occupy, **occupō, l.**  
 Octodurus, **Octodūrus, ī, m.**  
 of, from, **ā, ab, prep.** with abl.  
 of, concerning, **dē, prep.** with  
 abl.  
 of (partitive), **ē, ex.**  
 offer, **dō, dare, dedī, datus.**  
 offer battle, **proeliō lacessō,**  
**ere, lacessivī, lacessitus;**  
 lit. *worry by battle.*  
 often, **saepe.**  
 old, **vetus, eris.**  
 old man, **senex, senis, m.**  
 on, in, **prep.** with abl.  
 on, concerning, **dē, prep.** with  
 abl.

on all sides, from all sides, undique.	outside, <i>extrā</i> , prep. with acc.
once, once upon a time, <i>quon-</i> <i>dam</i> ; <i>ōlim</i> .	overthrow, <i>ēvertō</i> , ere, <i>verti</i> , versus.
once, one time, <i>semel</i> .	owe, <i>dēbeō</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>uī</i> , itus.
at once, <i>statim</i> .	P.
one, <i>ūnus</i> , a, um.	pain, <i>dolor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.
one . . . another, <i>alius</i> . . . <i>alius</i> .	panic, <i>pavor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m.
the one . . . the other, <i>alter</i> . . . <i>alter</i> .	part, <i>pars</i> , <i>partis</i> , f.
only, <i>tantum</i> .	party, <i>partēs</i> , ium, f.
only one, <i>ūnus</i> , a, um.	pass, <i>passes</i> , <i>angustiae</i> , <i>ārum</i> , f.
onset, <i>impetus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m.	pass, spend, <i>dēgō</i> , ere, <i>dēgī</i> .
opinion, deliberate judgment, <i>sententia</i> , ae, f.	pass over, <i>omittō</i> , ere, <i>mīsī</i> , <i>missus</i> .
opportunity, <i>facultās</i> , <i>ātis</i> , f. ; <i>occāsiō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f.	pass the winter, <i>hiemō</i> , l.
oppression, <i>obsidiō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f.	pass through, <i>transeō</i> , <i>īre</i> , <i>iī</i> , <i>itūrus</i> .
or, <i>aut</i> ; <i>vel</i> .	passage, <i>iter</i> , <i>itineris</i> , n.
or, in second member of a double question, <i>an</i> or <i>-ne</i> .	past, by, <i>praeter</i> , prep. with acc.
or not, in questions, <i>annōn</i> , <i>necne</i> .	pay (noun), <i>stīpendium</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.
ordain, <i>dēcernō</i> , ere, <i>crēvī</i> , <i>crētus</i> .	pay (verb), <i>pendō</i> , ere, <i>pependī</i> , <i>pēnsus</i> ; <i>solvō</i> , ere, <i>solvī</i> , <i>solūtus</i> .
order (verb), <i>jubeō</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>jussī</i> , <i>jussus</i> .	peace, <i>pāx</i> , <i>pācis</i> , f.
order (noun), <i>mandātum</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.	people, <i>populus</i> , <i>ī</i> , m.
order, at the order, <i>jussū</i> .	perceive, <i>sentiō</i> , <i>īre</i> , <i>sēnsī</i> , <i>sēn-</i> <i>sus</i> .
Orgetorix, <i>Orgetorīx</i> , <i>rīgis</i> , m.	perform, <i>fungor</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>fūctus</i> sum.
other, another, <i>alius</i> , a, ud.	period of life, <i>aetās</i> , <i>ātis</i> , f.
other, the other, <i>alter</i> , a, um.	permission, sanction, <i>voluntās</i> , <i>ātis</i> , f.
others, all the others, <i>cēterī</i> , <i>ae</i> , a.	permit, <i>permittō</i> , ere, <i>mīsī</i> , <i>mis-</i> <i>sus</i> ; <i>sinō</i> , ere, <i>sīvī</i> , <i>situs</i> ; be permitted, it is per- mitted, <i>licet</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>uit</i> .
other side of, <i>ultrā</i> , prep. with acc.	persuade, <i>persuādeō</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>suāsī</i> , <i>suāsum</i> .
our, our own, <i>noster</i> , <i>tra</i> , <i>trum</i> .	



- Piso, **Pīsō**, ōnis, m.  
pitch, **pōnō**, ere, **posuī**, itus.  
pity, it excites pity, **miseret**,  
**miserēre**, miseruit, impersonal;  
also **misereor**, **ērī**, itus.  
place, **locus**, ī, m.  
place, **collocō**, 1.  
place in charge, place in command over,  
place over, **praeficiō**, ere, **fēcī**, **fectus**,  
with the dat. of indirect obj.  
plain, **plānitiēs**, ēī, f.  
plan, **cōnsilium**, ī, n.  
pleasure, **voluptās**, ātis, f.  
plough, **arō**, 1.  
Pompey, **Pompējus**, ī, m.  
poor, **pauper**, eris.  
possess, **possideō**, ēre, **sēdī**, **sessus**.  
post, place, **locus**, ī, m.  
power, **potestās**, ātis, f.; **potentia**,  
ae, f.  
powerful, **potēns**, entis, m.  
praise (noun), **laus**, **laudis**, f.  
praise (verb), **laudō**, 1.  
praiseworthy, **laudābilis**, e.  
prepare, prepare for, **parō**, 1,  
with acc.  
present, **praesēns**, entis.  
present, be present, **adsum**,  
**esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**.  
present, **dōnō**, 1.  
prevent, **prohibeō**, ēre, **uī**, itus.  
previously, before, **ante**, adv.  
prisoner, captive, **captīvus**, ī,  
m.  
privilege, **commodum**, ī, n.  
prize (verb), **māgnī aestimō**, 1.  
prize (noun), **praemium**, ī, n.  
proceed, **pergō**, ere, **perrēxī**,  
**rēctum**.  
Procillus, **Procillus**, ī, m.  
production, **opus**, eris, n.  
project, **cōnsilium**, ī, n.  
promise (verb), **prōmittō**, ere,  
**mīsī**, **missus**; **polliceor**,  
**ērī**, itus.  
promise (noun), **pollicitātiō**,  
ōnis, f.  
protect, **tueor**, **ērī**.  
provide, provide for, **cūrō**, 1.  
provided, provided that, **dum**;  
provided only, **dum modo**.  
province, **prōvincia**, ae, f.  
provincials, **sociī**, ōrum, m.  
punishment, **supplicium**, ī, n.  
pupil, **discipulus**, ī, m.  
pursue, **sequor**, ī, **secūtus**.  
pursuit, **studium**, ī, n.  
put, place, **pōnō**, ere, **posuī**,  
**positus**.  
put in charge, **praeficiō**, ere,  
**fēcī**, **fectus**; governs acc.  
and dat.  
put to confusion, **perturbō**, 1.  
put to flight, **fugō**, 1.  
  
Q.  
quaestor, **quaestor**, ōris, m.  
quickly, **celeriter**.  
  
R.  
raise (a mound, etc.), **exstruō**,  
ere, **strūxī**, **strūctus**.

- rashness, *temeritās, ātis, f.*  
 ravage, *populor, l.*  
 read, *legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.*  
 read (aloud), *recitō, l.*  
 ready, *prōmptus, a, um.*  
 rear, *novissimum agmen (ag-  
 minis), n.*  
 reason, *causa, ae, f.*  
 receive, *accipiō, ere, cēpī, cep-  
 tus.*  
 recent, *recēns, entis.*  
 recollection, *memoria, ae, f.*  
 recount, *ēnumerō, l.*  
 redoubt, *castellum, ī, n.*  
 reduce, *redigō, ere, ēgī, āctus.*  
 refrain, *abstineō, ēre, uī, ten-  
 tum.*  
 refuse, *dēnegō, l.*  
 regal power, *rēgnum, ī, n.*  
 regard, *habeō, ēre, uī, itus ;  
 existimō, l.*  
 regret, it causes regret, *paeni-  
 tet, ēre, uit, impersonal.*  
 reject, *respuō, ere, uī.*  
 rejoice, *gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus.*  
 relieve, free from, *liberō, l.*  
 relinquish, *relinquō, ere, liquī,  
 līctus.*  
 relying, *frētus, a, um.*  
 remain, *maneō, ēre, mānsī,  
 mānsūrus.*  
 remain in charge, *praesum,  
 esse, fuī.*  
 remain vacant, *vacō, l.*  
 remaining, remainder of, *reli-  
 quus, a, um.*  
 remember, bear in mind, *me-  
 mini, isse ; reminīscor, ī,*
- supplies the present parti-  
 ciple of *meminī.*  
 remind, *admoneō, ēre, uī, itus.*  
 renew, *renovō, l.*  
 repent, it repents, *paenitet,  
 ēre, uit, impersonal.*  
 reply, *respondeō, ēre, respondī,  
 respōnsus.*  
 report, announce, *nūntiō, l.*  
 report, *nūntius, ī, m.*  
 republic, *rēs pūblica, reī pūbli-  
 cae, f.*  
 reputation, *fāma, ae, f.*  
 resist, *resistō, ere, restitī, with  
 dat.*  
 resources, *opēs, um, f.*  
 rest, the rest, *cēteri, ae, a.*  
 rest on, *positus est in, with  
 abl.*  
 restore, replace, *restituō, ere,  
 uī, ūtus ; restore, return,  
 reddō, ere, reddidī, red-  
 ditus.*  
 retain, *retineō, ēre, uī, tentus.*  
 retreat, *recipiō, ere, cēpī, cep-  
 tus, with the reflexive.*  
 return, *reditus, ūs, m.*  
 return, go back, *redeō, īre, iī,  
 itum ; revertor, ī.*  
 reward (noun), *mūnus, eris, n.*  
 reward (verb), *remūneror, l.*  
 Rhea Silvia, *Rhea Silvia, ae, f.*  
 Rhine, *Rhēnus, ī, m.*  
 rich, *dīves, itis.*  
 right, *jūs, jūris, n.*  
 right, *rēctus, a, um.*  
 river, *flūmen, inis, n.*  
 road, *via, ae, f.*

Roman, *Rōmānus*, a, um; as  
 noun, *Rōmānus*, ī, m.  
 Rome, *Rōma*, ae, f.  
 Romulus, *Rōmulus*, ī, m.  
 rout, *fugō*, l.  
 route, *iter*, *itineris*, n.  
 rower, *rēmex*, *igis*, m.  
 rule, *imperium*, ī, n.

S.

Sabinus, *Sabīnus*, ī, m.  
 sacred, *sacer*, *cra*, *crum*.  
 safe, *tūtus*, a, um; *salvus*, a,  
 um.  
 safe and sound, *sōspes*, *itis*.  
 safety, *salūs*, *ūtis*, f.  
 sake, for the sake, *causā* (abl.)  
 with gen.; the gen. always  
 precedes.  
 sally, make a sally, *ērumpō*,  
*ere*, *rūpī*, *ruptus*.  
 salute, *salūtō*, l.  
 same, *īdem*, *eadem*, *idem*.  
 save, *servō*, l.  
 say, *dīcō*, *ere*, *dīxī*, *dictus*.  
 Scipio, *Scīpiō*, *ōnis*, m.  
 scout, *explōrātor*, *ōris*, m.  
 sea, *mare*, is, n.  
 seamanship, *rēs nauticae*, *rē-*  
*rum nauticārum*, f.  
 second, *secundus*, a, um.  
 secure, procure, *parō*, l.  
 see, *videō*, *ēre*, *vīdī*, *vīsus*.  
 seek, *petō*, *ere*, *īvī* (ii), *ītus*.  
 seem, *videor*, *ērī*, *vīsus*.  
 seize, *occupō*, l.  
 seldom, *rārō*.  
 select, *dēligō*, *ere*, *lēgī*, *lēctus*.

self, oneself, *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*.  
 self, *i.e.* I myself, you your-  
 self, *etc.*, *ipse* in apposition  
 with a noun or pronoun.  
 sell, *vēndō*, *ere*, *vēndidī*, *vēndi-*  
*tus*.  
 Senate, *senātus*, *ūs*, m.  
 send, *mittō*, *ere*, *mīsī*, *missus*.  
 send back, *remittō*, *ere*, *mīsī*,  
*missus*.  
 Senones, *Senonēs*, um, m.  
 Sequani, *Sēquanī*, *ōrum*, m.  
 Sequanian, *Sēquanus*, a, um.  
 sesterce, *sēstertius*, ī, m., Ro-  
 man coin worth about five  
 cents; gen. plur. *sēsterti-*  
*um*.  
 set on fire, *incendō*, *ere*, *cendī*,  
*cēnsus*.  
 set out, *proficīscor*, *ī*, *fectus sum*.  
 settle, place, *collocō*, l.  
 settler, *colōnus*, ī, m.  
 seven, *septem*.  
 seven hundredth, *septingen-*  
*tēsimus*, a, um.  
 share, *pars*, *partis*, f.  
 shelter, *tēctum*, ī, n.  
 shield, *scūtum*, ī, n.  
 ship, *nāvis*, is, f.  
 shore, *lītus*, *oris*, n.  
 short, *brevis*, e.  
 show (oneself), *praestō*, *āre*,  
*praestitī*, *praestitus*.  
 shower, *imber*, *imbris*, m.  
 shudder, shudder at, *horreō*,  
*ēre*, *uī*.  
 siege, *obsidiō*, *ōnis*, f.  
 sight, *cōspectus*, *ūs*, m.

silent, be silent, become silent, taceō, ēre, uī, itus.	spare, parcō, ere, pepercī, par- sūrus.
similar, similis, e.	speak, loquor, ī, locūtus.
since (causal), cum.	speech, ōrātiō, ōnis, f.
situated, is situated, situs est (sinō, ere, sīvī, situs).	speed, celeritās, ātis, f.
six, sex.	spend, dēgō, ere, dēgī.
six hundred, sexcentī, ae, a.	spot, place, locus, ī, m.
sixteen, sēdecim.	spring, vēr, vēris, n.
sixty, sexāgintā.	state, cīvītās, ātis, f.
size, māgnitūdō, inis, f.	station, collocō, l.
slay, occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus.	statue, statua, ae, f.
slinger, funditor, ōris, m.	steadfastness, cōnstantia, ae, f.
small, parvus, a, um.	steep, arduus, a, um.
of small account, parvī.	still (temporal), adhūc.
snatch, snatch away, ēripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus.	stone, lapis, idis, m.
so (of degree), tam, adeō.	storm, tempestās, ātis, f.
so, thus (of manner), sīc, ita.	(story), the story goes, trādi- tur, trādī, trāditum est, lit. <i>it is handed down.</i>
so great, tantus, a, um.	stream, flūmen, inis, n.
so many, tot, indeclinable.	strength, vīrēs, ium, f.; pl. of vīs.
so much, so greatly, tanto- pere.	strict, sevērus, a, um.
soldier, mīles, itis, m.	strip, nūdō, l; exuō, ere, uī, ūtus.
soldurii, solduriī, ōrum, m.	strong, validus, a, um.
some, something, aliquis, ali- qua, aliquid or aliquod.	such, tālis, e.
some one, aliquis.	sudden, subitus, a, um.
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.	suddenly, subitō.
some (persons), nōnnūllī, ōrum.	sue for, petō, ere, īvī or īī, itus.
somehow or other, nescio quō pactō.	Suebi, Suēbī, ōrum, m.
son, filiū, ī, m.	suffer, patior, ī, passus sum.
soon, quickly, mox; cito.	suffer from, labōrō, l.
sooner, citius.	sufficient, satis.
sorrow, maeror, ōris, m.	suitable, idōneus, a, um.
space, spatium, ī, n.	summer, aestās, ātis, f.
	summit of, summus, a, um, limiting a substantive.

summon, *vocō*, 1; *arcessō*, *ere*,  
*īvī*, *ītus*.  
 supplies, *commeātus*, *ūs*, *m*.  
 surpass, *superō*, 1.  
 surrender, *trādō*, *ere*, *trādidī*,  
*trādītus*.  
 surround, *circumveniō*, *īre*,  
*vēnī*, *ventus*; *circumdō*,  
*dare*, *dedī*, *datus*.  
 suspicion, *suspiciō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 sword, *gladius*, *ī*, *m*.

T.

take, *capiō*, *ere*, *cēpī*, *captus*.  
 take away, take from, *adimō*,  
*ere*, *ēmī*, *ēptus*.  
 take possession, *possidō*, *ere*,  
*sēdī*, *sessus*.  
 talent, *talentum*, *ī*, *n*.  
 teach, *doceō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *doctus*.  
 taught, *ēdoctus*.  
 teacher, *praeceptor*, *ōris*, *m*. ;  
*praeceptrīx*, *īcis*, *f*.  
 tear down, *rescindō*, *ere*, *scidī*,  
*scissus*; *dīruō*, *ere*, *ruī*,  
*rutus*.  
 tell, say, *dīcō*, *ere*, *dīxī*, *dictus*.  
 temper, *animus*, *ī*, *m*.  
 temple, *aedēs*, *is*, *f*. ; *templum*,  
*ī*, *n*. When used with pre-  
 cision *aedēs* refers to the  
 building only, while *tem-  
 plum* includes the conse-  
 crated area as well.  
 ten, *decem*.  
 tenth, *decimus*, *a*, *um*.  
 terms, conditions, *condiciōnēs*,  
*um*, *f*.

terrify, *terreō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *territus*.  
 territory, *finēs*, *ium*, *m*.  
 than, *quam*, *conj*.  
 thanks, *grātiaē*, *ārum*, *f*.  
 that, *ille*, *illa*, *illud*; *is*, *ea*, *id* ;  
 that of yours, *iste*, *ista*,  
*istud*.  
 that (rel. pron.), *quī*, *quae*,  
*quod*.  
 that, in order that, *ut*; *quī*,  
*quae*, *quod* with the sub-  
 junctive; with comparatives,  
*quō*.  
 that, lest, with verbs of *fear-  
 ing*, *nē*.  
 that not, in order that not,  
*nē*.  
 that not, with verbs of *fear-  
 ing*, *ut*.  
 that (of result), *ut*; that not,  
*ut nōn*.  
 that, the fact that, *quod*, *conj*.  
 that, on the ground that,  
*quod*.  
 that, after verbs of doubting,  
*etc.*, *quīn*, lit. *why not?*  
 the . . . the (with compara-  
 tives), *quō* . . . *eō*.  
 theft, *fūrtum*, *ī*, *n*.  
 their, their own, *suus*, *a*, *um*.  
 then, afterwards, *deinde*.  
 then, accordingly, *igitur*.  
 then, at that time, *tum*.  
 there, *ibi*.  
 therefore, *itaque*; or *igitur* fol-  
 lowing one or more words  
 of the sentence.  
 thick, *crassus*, *a*, *um*.

- thing, *rēs, reī, f.*  
 thing, a thing which, *id*  
*quod*, or simply *quod*.  
 think, *putō, 1*; *arbitror, 1*.  
 think, regard, *existimō, 1*.  
 third, *tertius, a, um*.  
 third, third part, *tertia pars*.  
 thirty, *trīgintā*.  
 this, *hīc, haec, hōc*.  
 thither, *eō*.  
 those (as antecedent of rela-  
 tive), *eī, eae, ea*.  
 thou, *tū, tuī*.  
 though, *quamquam, quamvis,*  
*etsī, cum*.  
 thousand, *mīlle, pl. mīlia, ium,*  
*n*.  
 threaten, *minor, 1*.  
 threats, *minae, ārum, f*.  
 three, *trēs, tria*.  
 three days, *trīduum, ī, n*.  
 three years, *triennium, ī, n*.  
 through, through the instru-  
 mentality of, *per, prep.*  
 with acc.  
 thus, *ita*; *sīc*.  
 thwart, *trānstrum, ī, n*.  
 till, *dum, dōnec, quoad, conj.*  
 till, up to, *ad, prep.* with acc.  
 time, *tempus, oris, n*.  
 to, *ad, prep.* with acc.  
 to which, whither, *quō, adv.*  
 toil, labor, *ōris, m*.  
 (too), and that too, *et is, ea,*  
*id*.  
 top of, *summus, a, um*.  
 touch, *moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus*.  
 Toulouse, *Tolōsa, ae, f*.  
 towards (of feeling), *in, ergā,*  
 with acc.; of motion, *ad,*  
 with acc.  
 town, *oppidum, ī, n*.  
 townspeople, *oppidānī, ōrum,*  
*m*.  
 trader, *mercātor, ōris, m*.  
 train, *exerceō, ēre, uī, itus*.  
 traitor, *prōditor, ōris, m*.  
 transport, *trānsportō, 1*.  
 treacherous, *perfidus, a, um*.  
 treachery, *perfidia, ae, f*.  
 treason, *prōditiō, ōnis, f*.  
 treat, behave towards, *ūtor, ī,*  
*ūsus*.  
 treat of, *agō, ere, ēgī, āctus*.  
 trench, *fossa, ae, f*.  
 Treveri, *Trēverī, ōrum, m*.  
 tribe, *gēns, gentis, f*.  
 tribune, *tribūnus, ī, m*.  
 tribute, *stīpendium, ī, n*.  
 troops, *cōpiae, ārum, f*.  
 trust, *cōfidō, ere, fīsus, semi-*  
*dep*.  
 twelfth, *duodecimus, a, um*.  
 twelve, *duodecim*.  
 twenty, *vīgintī*.  
 twice, *bis*.  
 two, *duo, duae, duo*.  
 two days, *bīduum, ī, n*.  
 two hundred, *ducentī, ae, a*.  
 two years, *biennium, ī, n*.
- U.
- Ubii, *Ubiī, ōrum, m*.  
 undergo, *subeō, īre, iī, itūrus*.  
 understand, *intellegō, ere, lēxī,*  
*lēctus*.

undertake, *suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus.*

unharmed, *incolumis, e.*

uninterruptedly, *contincnter.*

unjust, *injūstus, a, um.*

unless, *nisi.*

unless indeed, *nisi vērō, nisi forte.*

unlike, *dissimilis, e.*

unmindful, *immemor, oris.*

until, *dum, dōnec, quoad* ; as prep., *ad* with acc.

unwilling, *invītus, a, um.*

be unwilling, *nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.*

unworthy, *indīgnus, a, um.*

uprightly, *honestē.*

uprightness, *probitās, ātis, f.*

uprising, *tumultus, ūs, m.* ; *mōtus, ūs, m.*

urge, *hortor, l.*

us, *nōs, nostrum, nostrī, pl. of ego.*

use, *ūtor, ī, ūsus.*

usually, *ferē.*

V.

valley, *vallis, is, f.*

valor, *virtūs, ūtis, f.*

Veneti, *Venetī, ōrum, m.*

(vengeance), take vengeance on, *ulcīscor, ī, ultus.*

Veragri, *Veragrī, ōrum, m.*

Vercingetorix, *Vercingetorīx, rīgis, m.*

vergobretus, *vergobretus, ī, m.*

very, *valdē.*

with substantives, *ipse, a, um.*

very, with superlatives, *vel.*

very many, *complūrēs, ia.*

very much, *plūrimum.*

Vesontio, *Vesontīō, ōnis, m.*

vessel, *nāvis, is, f.*

vice, *vitium, ī, n.*

vicinity, in the vicinity of, for the vicinity of, *ad*, with acc.

victory, *victōria, ae, f.*

village, *vīcus, ī, m.*

virtue, *virtūs, ūtis, f.*

visit, *adeō, īre, iī, itus.*

W.

wage, *gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.*

wait, *expectō, l.*

wall, *mūrus, ī, m.*

war, *bellum, ī, n.*

ward off, *dēpellō, ere, pulī, pulsus.*

warlike, *bellicōsus, a, um.*

(warning), give a warning, *admoneō, ēre, uī, itus.*

watch, *vigilia, ae, f.*

watchfulness, *vigilantia, ae, f.*

water, *aqua, ae, f.*

way, manner, *modus, ī, m.*

way, route, *iter, itineris, n.*

weak, *dēbilis, e* ; *mollis, e.*

wealth, *dīvitiae, ārum, f.*

weapons, *arma, ōrum, n.*

welcome, *grātus, a, um.*

well-to-do, *beātus, a, um.*

what (interrog.), *quid, subst.*

whatever, *quisquis, quicquid.*

when ? *quāndō.*

when (relative), *cum, ut, ubi.*

whenever, <i>ut, cum</i> .	pation), <i>apud</i> , prep. with acc.
where? <i>ubi</i> .	withdraw, <i>dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus</i> .
where (relative), <i>ubi</i> .	within, <i>intrā</i> , prep. with acc.
whether, <i>num, -ne</i> .	without, <i>sine</i> , prep. with abl.
whether . . . or, <i>utrum . . . an</i> ;	be without, <i>careō, ēre, uī, itūrus</i> .
whether . . . not, <i>nōnne</i> .	withstand, <i>sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus</i> .
which, <i>quī, quae, quod</i> .	woman, <i>mulier, eris, f</i> .
while, <i>dum, dōnec</i> , conj.	wonder, <i>mīror, l</i> .
who? <i>quis</i> .	wonderful, <i>mīrābilis, e</i> .
who, which (rel. pron.), <i>quī, quae, quod</i> .	wonted, <i>solitus, a, um</i> .
who (does) not, who (is) not, <i>quīn</i> .	woods, <i>silva, ae, f</i> .
whole, <i>tōtus, a, um</i> .	word, <i>verbum, ī, n</i> .
why? <i>cūr, quīd, quam ob rem</i> .	work (a work), <i>opus, eris, n</i> .
why not, after <i>nūlla causa est, etc., quīn</i> .	worthy, <i>dīgnus, a, um</i> .
wicked, <i>malus, a, um ; scelerātus, a, um</i> .	wounded, <i>saucius, a, um</i> .
wife, <i>uxor, ōris, f</i> .	wreck (of vessels), <i>frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus</i> .
wild, <i>trux, trucis</i> .	write, <i>scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus</i> .
will, <i>testāmentum, ī, n</i> .	wrong, <i>injūria, ae, f</i> .
willingly, readily, <i>libenter</i> .	
win, earn, <i>mereō, ēre, uī, itus</i> .	
win over, <i>conciliō, l</i> .	
winter, <i>hiems, emis, f</i> .	
winter quarters, <i>hīberna, ōrum, n</i> .	
winter, spend the winter, <i>hiemō, l</i> .	
wipe out, destroy, <i>dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus</i> .	
wisdom, <i>sapientia, ae, f</i> .	
wish, <i>volō, velle, voluī</i> .	
with, <i>cum</i> , prep. with abl.	
with (not involving partici-	
	Y.
	year, <i>annus, ī, m</i> .
	yesterday, <i>herī</i> .
	yet, nevertheless, <i>tamen</i> .
	not yet, <i>nōndum</i> .
	yield, <i>cēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus</i> .
	you, <i>tū, tuī ; vōs, vestrum or vestrī</i> .
	young man, <i>juvenis, is, m</i> .
	your, your own, <i>tuus, a, um ; vester, tra, trum</i> .



## Latin Lessons.

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 16mo, cloth, 191 pages. Price, 70 cents.

PROFESSOR BENNETT is a believer in the old-fashioned method of beginning Latin, that is, learning the forms first, learning them in order, and learning them once and for all. The Latin Lessons is a book that sends the beginner directly to the grammar for forms and rules, taking them up in their regular order. Complete sentences are found in the very first lesson, and easy stories are introduced as soon as the pupil has learned enough grammar, in the regular order, to read them. Teachers who believe in the method of "resolute, systematic, and sustained attack on declensions and conjugations" will find Professor Bennett's new book admirably suited to help them in their work.

A. L. K. Volkman, *Volkman School, Boston, Mass.*: I like Bennett's Latin Lessons very much. You are getting somewhere, and you know what you have got, and you get the *whole thing*, which is the main point.

## The Foundations of Latin.

A book for Beginners. Revised Edition. By Professor C. E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 250 pages. Price, 90 cents.

THIS book presents the matter for the beginner in Latin in sixty chapters, the first thirty-five devoted almost entirely to inflections, the remaining twenty-five to syntax, both subjects being treated in the order in which they are usually found in the grammar. Such rules of syntax as are needed for reading and writing simple sentences are given in the earliest lessons, so that the pupil has constant drill on the forms while acquiring them; but the systematic study of general syntax is postponed till the pupil shall have mastered the forms. The book serves equally well as an introduction to Caesar or Nepos.

Dr. R. M. Jones, *Penn Charter School, Philadelphia, Pa.*: We have adopted Bennett's Foundations of Latin. It is the best book of its class.

George D. Bartlett, *Pratt Institute, Brooklyn, N.Y.*: I have used a great many introductory Latin books, and have found none so satisfactory as Bennett's Foundations of Latin.

## Cæsar's Gallic War.

Books I.-IV. Indicated quantities, Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, Illustrations, and colored Maps and Plans. Edited by Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 352 pages. Price, \$1.00.

IN his Cæsar, Professor Bennett has had constantly in mind the point of view and the needs of the elementary pupil. No pains, therefore, have been spared to make the Notes simple in style, clear in statement, and pertinent and interesting in content. Every real difficulty receives consideration and explanation, particular care being taken to indicate the course of the thought and the connection of ideas. Book II. has been annotated with especial fulness for the benefit of those teachers who prefer to begin with this book rather than with Book I.

In matters of grammar and syntax, the editor, while following the treatment and nomenclature of his own Latin Grammar, has also inserted references to the other Latin grammars in common use. An Introduction of thirty-one pages treats of Cæsar's life and of the Roman art of war as practised in his day.

## Cicero's Orations.

Indicated quantities, full Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, Illustrations, and two colored Maps. Edited by Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT. 12mo, cloth, 374 pages. Price, \$1.00.

THIS edition includes seven Orations, — the four Catilines, the Manilian Law, Archias, and Marcellus.

The aim of the editor is not merely to help the pupil to a correct rendering of the text, sentence by sentence, but also to bring out the larger relations of thought which make these speeches masterpieces of the art of oratory. With this in mind, the Notes are intended to give a full historical outline of the circumstances of each oration, to keep the pupil in touch with the logic of the argument, and to give an adequate explanation of all points of Roman law or custom.

---

## *Virgil's Æneid: Books I.-VI.*

---

Edited by Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. With Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, Illustrations, and Map. 12mo, cloth, 491 pages. Price, \$1.20.

THIS edition of Virgil has the characteristics which distinguish all Professor Bennett's books, — simplicity, clearness, and scholarly accuracy.

A valuable feature of the book is the Introduction, containing a brief outline of Virgil's life, an appreciation of his various works, and a full explanation of the quantitative reading of Latin poetry, together with classified verses for practice. Further assistance is given the student in reading aloud, by the indicated quantities in Book I.

The notes aim to give all the information that may be needed by the average pupil in our secondary schools. In matters of syntax all poetic constructions or other peculiarities are fully explained as they occur; while on the literary side, all of the mythological and legendary allusions are made clear. These classical stories are further illustrated by a number of admirable pictures reproducing, in all cases, ancient statuary.

Grammatical references are to the author's Latin Grammar and to the latest editions of Allen and Greenough, Harkness, and Gildersleeve.

---

## *The Quantitative Reading of Latin Poetry.*

---

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT. 12mo, paper, 49 pages. Price, 25 cents.

BELIEVING that a more thorough study of the oral reading of Latin Poetry may prove a source of pleasure and profit, not only to the pupils but also to many teachers of the language, Professor Bennett has prepared this little monograph emphasizing the importance of the knowledge of quantities as well as of rhythm.

## A Latin Grammar.

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 282 pages. Price, 80 cents.

IN this book the essential facts of Latin Grammar are presented within the smallest compass consistent with high scholarly standards. It covers not only the work of the preparatory school, but also that of the required courses in college and university. By omitting rare forms and syntactical usages found only in ante-classical and post-classical Latin, and by relegating to an Appendix theoretical and historical questions, it has been found possible to treat the subject with entire adequacy in the compass of 250 pages exclusive of Indexes. In the German schools, books of this scope fully meet the exacting demands of the entire gymnasial course, and the host of teachers who have tried Bennett's Grammar find that they are materially helped by the absence of the mass of useless and irrelevant matter which forms the bulk of the older grammars.

## Appendix to Bennett's Latin Grammar.

For university work. 12mo, cloth, 246 pages. Price, 80 cents.

THE purpose of this book is to give such information regarding the history and development of the Latin language as experience has shown to be of service to advanced students.

The subjects treated are the Latin Alphabet, Pronunciation, Hidden Quantity, Accent, Orthography, The Latin Sounds, Inflections, Adverbs and Prepositions, and Syntax. Of these subjects, those of Hidden Quantity, Inflections, and Syntax receive special attention; and the results of recent investigation are set forth fully and clearly, but in compact form.

## Complete Edition.

Latin Grammar and Appendix in one volume. Price, \$1.25.



RETURN TO the circulation desk of any  
University of California Library

or to the

NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station  
University of California  
Richmond, CA 94804-4698

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS

- 2-month loans may be renewed by calling  
(510)642-6753
- 1-year loans may be recharged by bringing  
books to NRLF
- Renewals and recharges may be made  
4 days prior to due date

**DUE AS STAMPED BELOW**

**SENT ON ILL**

**MAY 12 2005**

**U.C. BERKELEY**

YB 38064

M250127

PA 2087

B485

1905

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

